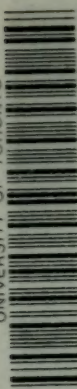


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00938268 0

SCOTT'S  
MARMION



PR  
5311  
A1  
1915

MILLAN'S · POCKET · CLASSICS



*Presented to the*  
LIBRARY *of the*  
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO  
*by*  
ESTATE OF THE LATE  
MARY SINCLAIR

AR  
M. Sinclair's







MARMION

# Macmillan's Pocket American and English Classics

A SERIES OF ENGLISH TEXTS, EDITED FOR USE IN ELEMENTARY AND SECONDARY SCHOOLS, WITH CRITICAL INTRODUCTIONS, NOTES, ETC.

16mo

Cloth

25 cents each

- Addison's Sir Roger de Coverley.  
Andersen's Fairy Tales.  
Arabian Nights' Entertainments.  
Arnold's Sohrab and Rustum.  
Austen's Pride and Prejudice.  
Bacon's Essays.  
Bible (Memorable Passages from).  
Blackmore's Lorna Doone.  
Browning's Shorter Poems.  
Browning, Mrs., Poems (Selected).  
Bryant's Thanatopsis, etc.  
Bulwer's Last Days of Pompeii.  
Bunyan's The Pilgrim's Progress.  
Burke's Speech on Conciliation.  
Burns' Poems (Selections from).  
Byron's Childe Harold's Pilgrimage.  
Byron's Shorter Poems.  
Carlyle's Essay on Burns.  
Carlyle's Heroes and Hero Worship.  
Carroll's Alice's Adventures in Wonderland (Illustrated).  
Chaucer's Prologue and Knight's Tale.  
Church's The Story of the Iliad.  
Church's The Story of the Odyssey.  
Coleridge's The Ancient Mariner.  
Cooper's The Deerslayer.  
Cooper's The Last of the Mohicans.  
Cooper's The Spy.  
Dana's Two Years Before the Mast.  
Defoe's Robinson Crusoe.  
De Quincey's Confessions of an English Opium-Eater.  
De Quincey's Joan of Arc, and The English Mail-Coach.  
Dickens' A Christmas Carol, and The Cricket on the Hearth.  
Dickens' A Tale of Two Cities.  
Dickens' David Copperfield.  
Dryden's Palamon and Arcite.  
Early American Oration, 1760-1824.  
Edwards' (Jonathan) Sermons.  
Eliot's Silas Marner.  
Emerson's Essays.  
Emerson's Early Poems.  
Emerson's Representative Men.  
English Narrative Poems.  
Epoch-making Papers in U. S. History.  
Franklin's Autobiography.  
Gaskell's Cranford.  
Goldsmith's The Deserted Village. She Stoops to Conquer, and The Good-natured Man.  
Goldsmith's The Vicar of Wakefield.  
Gray's Elegy, etc., and Cowper's John Gilpin, etc.  
Grimm's Fairy Tales.  
Hale's The Man Without a Country.  
Hawthorne's Grandfather's Chair.  
Hawthorne's Mosses from an Old Manse.  
Hawthorne's Tanglewood Tales.  
Hawthorne's The House of the Seven Gables.  
Hawthorne's Twice-told Tales (Selections from).  
Hawthorne's Wonder-Book.  
Holmes' Poems.  
Homer's Iliad (Translated).  
Homer's Odyssey (Translated).  
Hughes' Tom Brown's School Days.  
Huxley's Selected Essays and Addresses.  
Irving's Life of Goldsmith.  
Irving's Knickerbocker.  
Irving's The Alhambra.  
Irving's Sketch Book.  
Irving's Tales of a Traveller.  
Keary's Heroes of Asgard.  
Kempis, à: The Imitation of Christ.  
Kingsley's The Heroes.  
Lamb's The Essays of Elia.  
Lamb's Tales from Shakespeare.  
Lincoln's Addresses, Inaugurals, and Letters.  
Longfellow's Evangeline.  
Longfellow's Hiawatha.  
Longfellow's Miles Standish.  
Longfellow's Miles Standish and Minor Poems.  
Longfellow's Tales of a Wayside Inn.  
Lowell's The Vision of Sir Launfal.  
Macaulay's Essay on Addison.  
Macaulay's Essay on Hastings.  
Macaulay's Essay on Lord Clive.  
Macaulay's Essay on Milton.

# Macmillan's Pocket American and English Classics

A SERIES OF ENGLISH TEXTS, EDITED FOR USE IN ELEMENTARY AND SECONDARY SCHOOLS, WITH CRITICAL INTRODUCTIONS, NOTES, ETC.

16mo

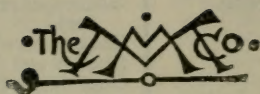
Cloth

25 cents each

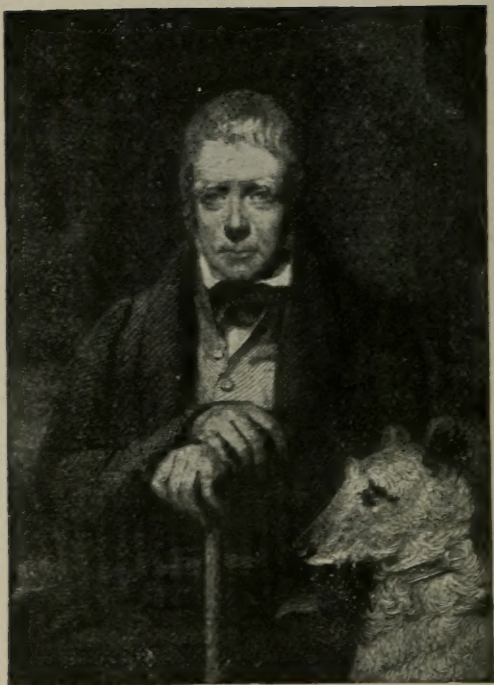
Macaulay's Lays of Ancient Rome.  
Macaulay's Life of Samuel Johnson.  
Malory's Le Morte d'Arthur.  
Milton's Comus and Other Poems.  
Milton's Paradise Lost, Books I. and II.  
Old English Ballads.  
Old Testament (Selections from).  
Out of the Northland.  
Palgrave's Golden Treasury.  
Parkman's Oregon Trail.  
Plutarch's Lives (Cæsar, Brutus, and Mark Antony).  
Poe's Poems.  
Poe's Prose Tales (Selections from).  
Poems, Narrative and Lyrical.  
Pope's Homer's Iliad.  
Pope's Homer's Odyssey.  
Pope's The Rape of the Lock.  
Ruskin's Sesame and Lilies.  
Ruskin's The Crown of Wild Olive and Queen of the Air  
Scott's Ivanhoe.  
Scott's Kenilworth.  
Scott's Lady of the Lake.  
Scott's Lay of the Last Minstrel.  
Scott's Marmion.  
Scott's Quentin Durward.  
Scott's The Talisman.  
Select Orations.  
Select Poems, for required reading in Secondary Schools.  
Shakespeare's As You Like It.  
Shakespeare's As You Like It (Tudor).  
Shakespeare's Comedy of Errors (Tudor).  
Shakespeare's Coriolanus (Tudor)  
Shakespeare's Hamlet.  
Shakespeare's Henry IV, Part I (Tudor)  
Shakespeare's Henry V.  
Shakespeare's Henry VI, Part I (Tudor).  
Shakespeare's Henry VIII (Tudor).  
Shakespeare's Julius Cæsar.

Shakespeare's King Lear.  
Shakespeare's Macbeth.  
Shakespeare's Macbeth (Tudor).  
Shakespeare's A Midsummer Night's Dream.  
Shakespeare's A Midsummer Night's Dream (Tudor).  
Shakespeare's Merchant of Venice.  
Shakespeare's Merchant of Venice (Tudor).  
Shakespeare's Richard II.  
Shakespeare's Romeo and Juliet (Tudor).  
Shakespeare's The Tempest.  
Shakespeare's Troilus and Cressida (Tudor).  
Shakespeare's Twelfth Night.  
Shelley and Keats: Poems.  
Sheridan's The Rivals and The School for Scandal.  
Southern Poets: Selections.  
Southern Orators: Selections.  
Spenser's Faerie Queene, Book I.  
Stevenson's Kidnapped.  
Stevenson's The Master of Ballantrae  
Stevenson's Travels with a Donkey, and An Inland Voyage.  
Stevenson's Treasure Island.  
Swift's Gulliver's Travels.  
Tennyson's Idylls of the King.  
Tennyson's In Memoriam.  
Tennyson's The Princess.  
Tennyson's Shorter Poems.  
Thackeray's English Humourists.  
Thackeray's Henry Esmond.  
Thoreau's Walden.  
Virgil's Æneid.  
Washington's Farewell Address, and Webster's First Bunker Hill Oration.  
Whittier's Snow-Bound and Other Early Poems.  
Woolman's Journal.  
Wordsworth's Shorter Poems.









Walter Pater.



# MARMION

*A TALE OF FLODDEN FIELD*

BY

SIR WALTER SCOTT

EDITED WITH AN INTRODUCTION AND NOTES  
FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS

BY

GEORGE B. AITON, M.A.

STATE INSPECTOR OF HIGH SCHOOLS FOR MINNESOTA

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

LONDON: MACMILLAN & CO., LTD.

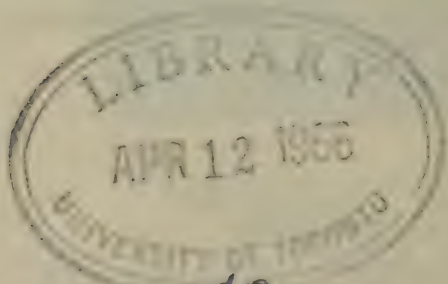
1915

*All rights reserved*

PR  
5311  
A1  
1915

COPYRIGHT, 1900,  
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and electrotyped January, 1900. Reprinted June,  
1901; April, 1902; May, 1903; July, 1903; July, October, 1905;  
February, 1907; April, 1908; February, 1909; January, 1910;  
January, 1911; August, 1912; July, 1913; February, 1914;  
January, 1915.



1053462

## PREFATORY NOTE

THE usual word may be said to the effect that this edition of *Marmion* has been prepared for the use of students in secondary schools. The notes are intended to aid the student in seeing from Scott's point of view. No attempt has been made at rhetorical analysis. Through the study of such a poem, the student's ear should become sensitive to the pleasure of a word finely chosen, of a thought fitly spoken; the student should become alive also to the pain of a jarring word, of an ignoble expression. But these are delicate processes of feeling rather than of judgment. They must be conducted opportunely or it were better not at all. They must be left to the instructor, while the editor contents himself with helping the student to get the author's thought. Some critics lament that so little is done to give students an idea of proportion and a sense of order in the arrangement of the parts of a composition, but we must plead again that literary structure is the province of the teacher. In fact the only excuse that can be offered for annotation is the difficulty of providing the members of a class with sufficient material for individual reference work. In the present edition no apology is needed for presenting a large part of the notes which Scott added to the last edition which passed under his own eye.



If *Marmion* be read well, the poem will serve as an open door for many a pleasant hour with the other poems and with the novels of Walter Scott. Carlyle says Scott was not a great man. Perhaps not. But he drops into one's library as a neighbor drops in from over the way. In this densely populated world of books we can truly say, though we have many, many callers, we have few old neighbors like Walter Scott.

GEORGE B. AITON.

MINNEAPOLIS, September, 1899.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFATORY NOTE . . . . .	v
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	ix
MARMION: A TALE OF FLODDEN FIELD . . . . .	2
Introduction to Canto I. . . . .	3
Canto I. The Castle . . . . .	14
Introduction to Canto II. . . . .	34
Canto II. The Convent . . . . .	43
Introduction to Canto III. . . . .	65
Canto III. The Hostel or Inn . . . . .	73
Introduction to Canto IV. . . . .	95
Canto IV. The Camp . . . . .	102
Introduction to Canto V. . . . .	126
Canto V. The Court . . . . .	133
Introduction to Canto VI. . . . .	167
Canto VI. The Battle . . . . .	175
L'Envoy . . . . .	213
MAP TO ILLUSTRATE "MARMION" . . . . .	215
NOTES . . . . .	217



## INTRODUCTION

THE life of Walter Scott has been given to the public by his son-in-law, J. G. Lockhart, in seven volumes of wholesome reading. The first chapter of the first volume is an autobiographical fragment found, after death, among Sir Walter's papers. This chapter, at least, should be read by every student. Few writers have seen more clearly or have stated more modestly just the circumstances which led them into authorship. In what is left unsaid, as well as in what is said, this short chapter by Scott's own hand is a model of discrimination. The essential events of his early life, that is to say, his life so far as it had a bearing on his work, are given with cheerfulness and vivacity; while occurrences of interest only to his immediate family and friends, occurrences without particular influence on his thought and literary activity, are as cheerfully suppressed. We regret that Scott so abruptly abandons his account as soon as the period of his preparation is past; but, short and unfinished as the fragment is, it is yet long enough and sufficiently complete to direct the young student's attention profitably and to put him on his guard against the two extremes of literary biography.

It is a favorite pastime of some critics to point out exactly how great writers come to be great. After an author has attained celebrity they are able to account



for each step in his progress with such minuteness and to cast such a halo of inevitable cause and effect about his head that we almost wonder the world does not see a new star in the sky when an author is born. Other critics, again, leave us an impression that there is no accounting for the appearance of literary ability. Great minds arise as if by chance, do their work in a way unknown to us, bequeath us their masterpieces, and pass away leaving us in ignorance of when and where and whether genius will reappear. The profitable field of thought, especially for students, lies between these extremes. We cannot tell which of the many acorns now forming will become the tallest oak in the forest; but we can be pretty sure there will be oaks, and tall oaks, in the future. We can gain an idea of the particular conditions of soil and climate favorable to forest growth, and when we do find a stately oak, we may be certain that it sprang from an oaken ancestry, that the acorn was sound, that forest conditions were favorable, and that the young tree followed the laws of growth by striking its tap root deep downward, by throwing its branches upward, and its leaves outward to the sunlight. Ability needs not title nor wealth; but it does not spring from a light and trifling family. Noble thoughts are not begotten by ignoble associations, nor is literary success the offspring of idleness and wasted opportunity. There are periods in the lives of nations when great sowings of ideas are followed by great gatherings of books. When a national stir develops leaders in thought as well as in action, they who are able and ready find opportunity.

Edinburgh was a famous old town, full of cultured homes and promising families with excellent schools and a learned university. Many a bright boy looked up at the old Castle rock with admiration, or took his way through the narrow wynds to school, or spent his half holiday in scaling Arthur's Seat, or in strolling on the sands of Leithside; but just why one particular lad of all these lads became the great poet and novelist of Scotland it would be hard to say. We can only point out the favorable conditions and circumstances under which Walter Scott grew from a story-loving child into a capital story-teller, and from that into a great romancer in prose and in verse.

**Ancestry.** — Scott's family tree grew in good soil midway between the poverty of the peasantry and the heights of nobility. The young lad had reason to be interested in the doings of his ancestors on both sides of the family. Scotts, Rutherfords, MacDougals, Campbells, Haliburtons, Swintons, and Buccleughs, — they were active in border fight and foray. Pass through the southeastern part of Scotland, through the valleys of the Teith, the Tweed, the Teviot, the Liddel, and the Yarrow, and wherever a crumbling castle calls up a tradition of troublous times you are likely to find that Scott's ancestors were foremost in attacking or else foremost in defending the outworks. In time of war they were prompt and courageous. They followed the royal banner of Scotland through its vicissitudes. They were in the glorious fight of Bannockburn; they fell with their king at Flodden; their bones are beneath the sod of every battlefield.

Wherever he went, Scott found battle grounds in the valleys, castles on the hillsides, and stories and songs in the minds of the people, that brought up not only Border incident and Border life, but the history of his own family as well. Some idea of this may be had from the statement that he had over ten thousand kinsmen (blood relatives), able to bear arms. Scott's ancestry was of just the degree to make him a teller of Scottish story. His grandfather was a sheep-farmer, his father was an attorney in Edinburgh, his mother was the daughter of an eminent physician. Had his father been an earl and he himself a prospective member of the House of Lords, it is quite unlikely that he would have cared for the local traditions and the minstrelsy of his own immediate neighborhood; or, at least, it is altogether probable that his mind would have been taken up with other affairs.

Scott followed up his literary pursuits with unexampled eagerness, but the work was not what he preferred. Scott would have chosen to be the owner of a lordly castle, rather than to be the minstrel who sang at its board. His disposition was essentially martial. To his dying day he would have preferred to be a military hero, a victor at Waterloo or Trafalgar, rather than to be, as he modestly supposed, a mere entertainer of his own day and generation. Had he been, like Burns, the son of a laboring man, his work certainly would have been different. He might not have had an opportunity to collect the minstrelsy of the Border. Even if he had become familiar with it, he could not have felt the interest that comes from family traditions. One would

describe the Tea Party in Boston Harbor with greater zest if he knew that his own great grandfather had dressed as an Indian and thrown some of the tea chests overboard; one could enter into the affair of King's Mountain with keener interest if he knew that his own forefathers wore coonskin caps and carried smoothbore flintlocks in that memorable fight.

As an illustration, the grandfather of Scott's grandfather was the grandson of a Walter Scott called Auld Watt of Harden, who wedded the most beautiful woman in the valley of the Yarrow. Now Auld Watt was a warlike old chieftain who made most of his living by taking a trip every now and again into the northern part of England, whence, unless caught napping, he and his retainers returned to their Yarrow fortress with as fine a drove of cattle as they could find, and as much household gear as they could tie to their saddles. One day, after a period of inactivity, Watt's wife, "The Flower of the Yarrow," served to him and his friends a dinner, the principal feature of which was a large dish containing nothing but a pair of spurs. They took the hint, so the story runs, went south and returned in due time with abundant supplies for her larder. Scott had scrambled over their fallen dwelling and had heard these tales from early boyhood. What wonder that he made the names of these old ancestors ring, as he himself says, in many a border ditty.

**Childhood.** — As might be expected from such parentage Walter Scott was a most vigorous infant. Unfortunately, however, he contracted a fever from a consumptive



foster nurse, who, poor woman, concealed her affliction from his parents. As the result of this illness he became lame for life in his right leg. A crowded city is a poor place for a lame child, so he was sent to his grandfather Scott's farm, where he grew up the favorite of the shepherds and the pet of his grandmother. Summer days were spent on the hills with the sheep and the shepherds, who were easily prevailed upon to tell their best tales to so appreciative a listener. Evenings and wintry weather he spent in the house coaxing stories out of his grandmother. A chance visitor was a prize, and was towed into port unmercifully. An unmarried aunt, of whom he ever spoke with affection, ransacked old books for stories to read him. The little fellow's memory was prodigious. A single reading of the longest tale was enough; he had it by heart and his childish voice was never weary of repeating it. The household appears at this time to have been devoted to his sole benefit, so much so that the local clergyman, who was accustomed, parish fashion, to hold forth gravely while the family listened, is said to have declared testily, that one might as well try to talk into the mouth of a cannon as attempt profitable conversation where such a child was shouting forth his latest heard ditty.

Scott has described his grandfather in the introduction to the third canto of *Marmion* as "The thatched mansion's gray-haired sire," etc., and in his preface to *Guy Mannering* we have an interesting anecdote of the same good gentleman. Smailholme Tower, in the vicinity of his grandfather's home, furnished the scene for one of his

earliest poems, the *Eve of St. John*, and the same tower is the Avenel Castle of *The Abbot* and *The Monastery*.

**Education.** — We have seen already that the early influences about the young Walter were favorable to his becoming a writer. The same aunt who read to him also taught him to read. It appears, however, that he much preferred having her read to him, and that he was wont to suggest the superior wisdom of being allowed to go out to the head shepherd, to whom he refers in line 137 of the introduction to the third canto. His lameness held him back from going early to school. We find him, when quite a lad, visiting London, trying the cure at Bath, and oscillating between Edinburgh and Sandy Knowe. At this period, he tells us, he was anxious that George Washington should be signally defeated, and he gained some credit as a tactician by claiming beforehand that Burgoyne could never find his way among so many far off North American lakes. In October, 1879, two years after Burgoyne's surrender, Walter was sent to the Edinburgh High School. He made excellent progress in English composition, and was noted for the fluency of his translations, but he was much more interested in the sports of the school yard, and particularly in the good-natured, but none the less vigorous, warfare vigilantly maintained between the boys of the school and the boys of the town. During his high school experience, which lasted five years, Walter read beyond all measure, even to the loss of his dinner; but he appears to have given little attention to his studies outside of the classroom. He was the favorite of his classmates, and, despite his lameness, he

was a leader in their sports and excursions; but he was the despair of his instructors, who thought they saw his talents going to waste. In after life he regretted not having been more systematic in his studies; but we can see that if he did not profit to the full extent by the disciplinary subjects of the high school, he did at least preserve his own natural method of expression, and, whatever he lost by heedlessness and want of application, we can see that his reading, his innocence, and his outdoor life brought him forward with his faculties unimpaired.

From the high school he went, far from well prepared, to the University of Edinburgh, where, at his father's request, he studied Latin, a term of Greek, ethics, moral philosophy, history, and civil and municipal law, — possibly a year's work in all. Lest students should find encouragement in this to neglect their work, we will add that in speaking of this course, Scott regretfully says: "If it should ever fall to the lot of youth to peruse these pages, let such a reader remember that it is with the deepest regret that I recollect in my manhood the opportunities of learning which I neglected in my youth; that through every part of my literary career I have felt pinched and hampered by my own ignorance; and that I would at this moment give half the reputation I have had the good fortune to acquire, if, by doing so, I could rest the remaining part upon a sound foundation of learning and science."

**Legal Studies.** — Scott's father was bent on making a lawyer out of him; so, during the winter of 1785-6, Walter was enrolled in his father's office for a five years'

apprenticeship. Scott's attitude at this time may be known from his own expression of "entering upon the dry and barren wilderness of forms and conveyances." Although Scott was afterward fond of using law terms in his writings, it does not appear that he applied himself closely to a mastery of these legal forms. His desk, from all accounts, was filled up with old chronicles and tales of knight errantry, poetry, and fiction of adventure generally. His spare time was occupied with spinning tales to the office boys or writing short, romantic stories. His holiday afternoons were spent in exploring old book-stalls, unearthing antiquities, and in reading his tales to an intimate in the most lonely recesses of Salisbury Crag. The only part of his legal work in which he took genuine interest was the copying of documents, which he was able to do at a tremendous speed, and which, according to the rules of the office, yielded him a fee at so much per page. The money went for books, but not for books of law. It must not be supposed that Scott was an undutiful son, or that he was in disgrace with his family. He was regarded as a young man of bright parts, who lacked application to any useful pursuit and who wasted brilliant mental powers in uselessly rummaging old libraries, romancing, and attending literary societies. Finally it was decided that Scott should leave the chance of a partnership in his father's office to a younger brother, and that he should prepare himself for admission to the bar as an advocate or pleader in the courts of his native country, a vocation requiring polish, wit, legal knowledge, and skill of address. To this preparation he appears to



have applied himself faithfully for the requisite term of years. He was admitted to the bar in July, 1792, when he "assumed the gown with all its duties and honors." A lively account of the relation which existed between himself and his father may be read in the introductory chapters of *Red Gauntlet*, which the student should read. Mr. Saunders Fairford, the exact, cautious, careful counsellor-at-law, with his Tory connections, and Whig practice, his love for Alan, and his despair at Alan's ways, is an exact representation, so it was said by those who knew him, of Scott's father. The father's pride may be seen in a line from a private letter: "I have the pleasure to tell you that my son has passed his private Scots law examinations with good approbation. . . . and on Friday he puts on the gown and gives a bit cback of dinner to his friends, as is the custom."

**The Practice of Law.** — Scott's law business was of the most humble sort. Most of it came through his father's office. His first case in a criminal court was the defence of a veteran poacher and sheep stealer, at Jedburgh, whom "he had the satisfaction of helping to escape through some of the meshes of the law. 'You're a lucky scoundrel,' whispered Scott to his client, when the verdict was pronounced. 'Indeed, I'm just o' your mind,' quoth the desperado, 'and I'll send you a maukin the morn, man.'" A maukin is a hare, which the culprit undoubtedly intended to poach during the night. We can imagine Scott telling the anecdote at his own expense when he returned to the city. Another case was the defence of a housebreaker, who, having no money, and

being about to go out of the business, advised him to use heavy old-fashioned locks, and to keep a terrier in his house. Scott afterward threw this incident into a couplet that still endures as a memorial of the long departed transgressor: —

“Yelping terrier, and rusty key,  
Was Walter Scott’s best Jeddart fee.”

Another case, for which he received five guineas, was an unavailing defence of an unfortunate clergyman who had fallen into disreputable ways and was turned out of the ministry. Later he defended and secured the acquittal of a sailor lad, who, in firing off a toy cannon, had accidentally killed a passer-by. A button, having in some way fallen into the cannon, took the place of bullet with fatal result.

Although he had the assistance of friends in securing business, his income appears to have been small. His fee book shows that his receipts the first year were £24, 3s, and even as far on as the fifth year of his practice, his income was less than \$800, a good third of which came from his father’s office. Although he was the life of a circle of brilliant young men who gathered about him in the law courts to hear his latest story, told as no one but himself could tell it, Scott was not what is known as a rising lawyer. His time was given largely to literary pursuits. In 1789 he was pleased to receive an appointment by the Crown to the vacant sheriffship, a district judgeship of Selkirkshire, a position carrying a salary of £300, sufficient to relieve his mind of financial anxiety, and requiring his

absence from Edinburgh but a small part of each year. Speaking of himself and his profession, Scott says, "There was no great love between us at the beginning, and it pleased Heaven to decrease it on further acquaintance."

A few years later he was appointed Clerk of a higher court in Edinburgh. This position also required but a part of his time.

Thus we see that his legal studies and his friends in the courts secured two routine appointments, the acceptance of which amounted to a virtual resignation of all claims to future eminence in the law, but which gave him a comfortable income and enabled him to establish a home in the country for occupancy during the summer season. Best of all, he was now able to give scope to his natural bent.

**Early Literary Work.** — After his admission to the bar, Scott gave free play to his love for Border lore. His gift for pleasing made him a welcome guest in many a gentleman's home throughout the country-side, and he seldom refused an invitation, if the vicinity gave promise of old castles and battlefields to be viewed, or of ballads to be heard. We read of excursions here and trips there — of a long ride in search of "Auld Thomas of Tuzzilehope, an Elliot, who was celebrated for his skill on the Border Pipe, and especially for his ability to sing the real *lilt* of *Dick o' the Cow*." As many as seven successive annual excursions were made into Liddesdale, full of uproarious fun and good humor, from which he returned each time laden with mementos, and happy in the possession of ballads sung by the peasantry. There were

no inns in Liddesdale, and none were needed. Scott rode on horseback from farmhouse to farmhouse, where his coming was hailed with delight and was the event of the summer. A Mr. Shortreed who guided him on these trips says: "Ah me, sic an endless fund o' humor and drollery as he had wi' him! Never ten yards but we were either laughing or roaring and singing. Wherever we stopped, how brawly he suited himsell to everybody! He aye did as the lave did: never made himsell the great man or took ony airs in the company. He was making himsell a' the time, but he didna ken, maybe, what he was about till years had passed. At first he thought o' little, I daresay, but the queerness and the fun." To one interested in the sources from which Scott afterward drew, an account of these trips is most suggestive. In a letter written from the vicinity of Flodden Field to a friend seventeen years before the publication of *Marmion*, we can find the germ of the sixth canto.

During the years of his apprenticeship to the law, it is doubtful whether Scott had any idea of what awaited him. It is probable that he did as he did simply because his natural tastes led him along. At any rate we find that he was a member of a literary coterie of young men who afterward became eminent in various learned professions. He pursued the study of German with avidity, being one of the first to realize that German literature runs parallel to English literature and is its only worthy rival in wealth of myth, tradition, fairy tale, and folk lore. Hours, that in the estimation of his prudent friends should have been spent in reading law, were



occupied in making metrical translations of such poems as *The Erl King*. His first considerable publication, in 1796, was a volume of ballads translated from the German. The influence of his German studies now brought him to the definite formation of a plan of his own for the publication of the *Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border*, for which he had long been acquiring material. It will be understood that many of these ballads, or at least the substance of them, were collected by word of mouth from the common people in the remotest glens of the Border, and would have been lost in these days of books and papers if they had not been recorded by Scott and his friends. Two volumes of the *Minstrelsy* appeared in 1802. Three years later Scott was so far encouraged by the reception of two or three of his own ballads as to write the *Lay of the Last Minstrel*, by the success of which the happy-go-lucky, affectionate, popular, but we may almost say briefless young lawyer, for whom his friends were anxious to make provision, at once leaped into prominence, and to the world became Edinburgh's most distinguished citizen.

Subsequently Scott wrote poems and novels almost without number. He became wealthy, purchased a barren but historic and sightly tract of land on the Tweed, and converted it into a fine forest in which he built his mansion of Abbotsford. Toward the end of his days he became involved in the failure of his publishers, and made extraordinary efforts to pay off his creditors. But all these details must be left for the student's own investigation.

**Marmion.** — The poem was begun in November, 1806, and was published in February, 1808. The first edition of two thousand copies in quarto form was sold at a guinea and a half, \$7.50 per copy. A second edition was required within a month, and cheaper editions followed in rapid succession. In all, some fifty thousand copies were sold during the author's lifetime.

Hearing that a new poem was under consideration, Constable, the great Edinburgh publisher, who had been pleased by his share in the publication of the *Lay of the Last Minstrel*, offered one thousand guineas for the right to publish *Marmion*, and actually paid Scott that sum before a line of the poem had been committed to paper. Lord Byron, then a young poet, born to station and to wealth, felt called upon to rebuke what he considered a mercenary disposition in Scott. The following is the passage: —

“ Next view in state, proud prancing on his roan,  
The golden-crested haughty Marmion,  
Now forging scrolls, now foremost in the fight,  
Not quite a felon, yet but half a knight,  
The gibbet or the field prepared to grace ;  
A mighty mixture of the great and base.  
And think'st thou, Scott ! by vain conceit perchance,  
On public taste to foist thy stale romance,  
Though Murray with his Miller may combine  
To yield thy muse just half a crown per line ?  
No ! when the sons of song descend to trade,  
Their bays are sear, their former laurels fade.  
Let such forego the poet's sacred name,  
Who rack their brains for lucre, not for fame ;

Still for stern Mammon may they toil in vain !  
And sadly gaze on gold they cannot gain !  
Such be their meed, such still the just reward  
Of prostituted muse and hireling bard !  
For this we spurn Apollo's venal son,  
And bid a long ' Good-night to Marmion. ' ”

In his introduction to the edition of 1830, long after Byron and Scott had exchanged letters of friendship and had learned to respect each other, Scott wrote very calmly : —

“ The transaction, being no secret, afforded Lord Byron, who was then at general war with all who blacked paper, an apology for including me in his satire entitled *English Bards and Scotch Reviewers*. I never could conceive how an arrangement between an author and his publishers, if satisfactory to the persons concerned, could afford matter of censure to any third party. I had taken no unusual or ungenerous means of enhancing the value of my merchandise, — I had never higgled a moment about the bargain, but accepted at once what I considered the handsome offer of my publishers. These gentlemen, at least, were not of opinion that they had been taken advantage of in the transaction, which indeed was one of their own framing ; on the contrary, the sale of the poem was far beyond their expectation. ”

After Scott entered upon the period of his most rapid writing, he customarily dashed off a few sheets each morning and sent them to his publisher for pruning and revision ; but *Marmion* was written before the demands upon his time were urgent, and the poem may be consid-

ered one of his best. If the composition had been in prose, we should have called *Marmion* a historical novel. Scott called the poem *A Tale of Flodden Field*, but it should be understood at the outset that the author made free with historical facts, not so much by inventing incidents as by changing time and place to suit his tale.

*Marmion* was written during a tremendous flush of national feeling, when the sound of fife and drum were in the air. Napoleon had not been overthrown at Waterloo. French success on the continent and threats of making Great Britain an appanage of France had stirred up the British Lion. With British supremacy questioned and British coasts threatened, we can see readily that the naval victories of the Nile, of Copenhagen, and of Trafalgar had aroused a storm of emotion, compared with which American enthusiasm over Dewey's victory at Manila was a mere tremor. In this national atmosphere, with honest British pride thrilling his cheeks, Scott wrote *Marmion* and sent it out to the people. Wise critics said he ought to have celebrated Nelson or Pitt or Sir John Moore, rather than a profligate knight three hundred years dead; but Scott knew his own powers, and any one can see for himself that the weakest parts of the poem are the passages in which he attempts to laud the victors in the Napoleonic wars. The people hailed *Marmion* with acclaim. When we remember how often Scotland, under the Stuarts, was leagued with France against England, we can understand that the English, in particular, were delighted that a native of



Scotland, a Scot of the Scots, should treat an English knight so chivalrously in a noble poem abounding in passages of ardent patriotism. Indirectly, but none the less effectively, the publication of *Marmion* proclaimed the adhesion of the Scots to the national cause.

As to the setting of the poem, it will be sufficient for the student to remember that Scott's descriptions of a knight, a costume, a castle, an inn, a feast, a tourney, or a march are to be considered as dating about the time of the discovery of America by Columbus.

Scott's chivalrous treatment of female characters should not be overlooked. If the student will run through the poem, reading the passages which pertain to any one woman, as Clare, or her unfortunate rival, he cannot fail to feel that they were written by a gentleman of native nobility — not blind to fault — but strong and manly in his make-up.

The introductions to the several cantos should be omitted at the first reading. Their general plan is given by Lockhart: "As for the 'epistolary dissertations' it must, I take it, be allowed that they interfered with the flow of the story, when readers were turning the leaves with the first ardor of curiosity, and they were not, in fact, originally intended to be interwoven in any fashion with the romance of *Marmion*. . . . Though the author himself does not allude to, and had perhaps forgotten the circumstance when writing the Introductory Essay of 1830, they were announced by an advertisement early in 1807, as *Six Epistles from Ettrick Forest*, to be published in a separate volume; and perhaps it might have been better that this



first plan had been adhered to. But, however that may be, are there any pages among all he ever wrote that any one would be more sorry he should not have written? They are among the most delicious portraitures that genius ever painted of itself, — buoyant, virtuous, happy genius, — exulting in its own energies, yet possessed and mastered by a clear, calm, modest mind, and happy only in diffusing happiness around it. With what gratification those Epistles were read by the friends to whom they were addressed, it would be superfluous to show. He had, in fact, painted them almost as fully as himself; and who might not have been proud to find a place in such a gallery! The tastes and habits of six of those men, in whose intercourse Scott found the greatest pleasure when his fame was approaching its meridian splendor, are thus preserved for posterity; and, when I reflect with what avidity we catch at the least hint which seems to afford us a glimpse of the intimate circle of any great poet of former ages, I cannot but believe that posterity would have held this record precious, even had the individuals been in themselves far less remarkable than a Rose, an Ellis, a Heber, a Skene, a Marriott, and an Erskine.”

Scott himself, speaking of the composition of *Marmion* twenty-two years afterward, says: “I may be permitted to say that the period of its composition was a very happy one in my life; so much so, that I remember with pleasure, at this moment, some of the spots in which particular passages were composed. It is probably owing to this that the Introductions to the several cantos as-

sumed the form of familiar epistles to my intimate friends, in which I alluded, perhaps more than was necessary or graceful, to my domestic occupations and amusements,— a loquacity which may be excused by those who remember that I was still young, light-headed, and happy, and that ‘out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh.’”

**Suggestions.**—To the student, it may be said, one should bear constantly in mind that Scott is describing scenery and customs which he had long studied. Norham is less than twenty-five miles from the home of his grandparents. *Marmion* was written within a morning’s gallop of Flodden Field. Much of the poem was composed, or at least thought out, while Scott’s eye actually rested on the hills and valleys mentioned. Make a list of the dozen or more adjectives in the first stanza of the first canto, and you will see that each is used as by one who had actually gazed long and lovingly on the high turrets, or if these had fallen, upon the mountains of Cheviot, and upon the river Tweed, whose murmuring under the window of Abbotsford, one quiet afternoon, was the last sound he heard. Genius finds literary material near at hand; mediocrity goes far afield; an unawakened mind goes to an encyclopædia.

Use a dictionary. Such words as *yard*, *stalworth*, *hosen*, and *plump* are good old English words. Look them up with care. Another thing: critics have given Scott high praise for the minuteness and accuracy of his descriptions. No literary man of the century has approached him in an intensive knowledge of the manners

and customs of mediæval chivalry. Marmion's entrance into Norham Castle, for instance, and his entertainment by Sir Hugh the Heron, are related with a wealth of circumstance that is wasted upon the student who does not consult his dictionary for the significance of unfamiliar terms. Look up the meaning of squire, seneschal, sewer, and pursuivant, of sumpter, housing and palfrey, of linstock, of pennon and scutcheon, and of mail and plate. When each word calls up a clear-cut idea the imagination can combine them into a picture or scene.

Be painstaking from the first to extract the sense from the rhythm. Here, for instance, are the first three lines of the second stanza of Canto I. :—

“Saint George's banner, broad and gay,  
Now faded, as the fading ray  
Less bright, and less, was flung.”

It is quite possible to run over such a passage without getting the meaning. The reader should dwell on the passage until, without transposing the words into a prose order, a clear impression is formed that the gay banner of England, floating out broadly on the evening sky, simply lost its brightness as the sunlight faded away. Unless the subject is unimportant or the reader intends to return, it is a mistake to pass by a sentence with a vague understanding of what it means. As a boy the present writer had an erroneous notion that poetry was written as a sort of melodious rhapsody which no one, not even the writer, was expected to understand fully. The intel-

ligent study of this poem will help the student to a clearer view of the usefulness and importance of real poetry.

**Books of Reference.** — Scott's part in the literary world has been so great that a list of essays and criticisms bearing on his own works would almost rival the bibliography of Milton or Shakespeare. Four books the student should have. They are a comprehensive dictionary, the Globe edition of Scott's *Poetical Works*, Lockhart's *Life of Scott*, and a good atlas of the Border country.

**Text.** — The text adopted for this edition is that collated by Mr. William J. Rolfe, and is here used with his courteous permission. In this text, which is certainly the most correct yet printed, numerous important misprints and misconstructions of the earlier editions have been corrected by Mr. Rolfe, and the whole carefully compared with all of the preceding editions.



MARMION :  
A TALE OF FLODDEN FIELD

Alas ! that Scottish maid should sing  
The combat where her lover fell !  
That Scottish Bard should wake the string,  
The triumph of our foes to tell !

LEYDEN'S *Ode on Visiting Flodden.*



# MARMION

## INTRODUCTION TO CANTO FIRST

TO WILLIAM STEWART ROSE,<sup>o</sup> ESQ.

*Ashestiel, Ettrick Fores.*

NOVEMBER's sky is chill and drear,  
November's leaf is red and sear :  
Late, gazing down the steepy linn  
That hems our little garden in,  
Low in its dark and narrow glen,  
You scarce the rivulet might ken,  
So thick the tangled greenwood grew,  
So feeble trilled the streamlet through ;  
Now, murmuring hoarse, and frequent seen  
Through bush and brier, no longer green, 14  
An angry brook, it sweeps the glade,  
Brawls over rock and wild cascade,  
And, foaming brown with double speed,  
Hurries its waters to the Tweed.

No longer autumn's glowing red  
Upon our Forest hills is shed ;  
No more, beneath the evening beam,  
Fair Tweed reflects their purple gleam.  
Away hath past the heather-bell  
That bloomed so rich on Needpath-fell ; 20

Sallow his brow, and russet bare  
Are now the sister heights of Yair.  
The sheep, before the pinching heaven,  
To sheltered dale and down are driven,  
Where yet some faded herbage pines,  
And yet a watery sunbeam shines ;  
In meek despondency they eye  
The withered sward and wintry sky,  
And far beneath their summer hill  
Stray sadly by Glenkinnon's rill. 35  
The shepherd shifts his mantle's fold,  
And wraps him closer from the cold :  
His dogs no merry circles wheel,  
But shivering follow at his heel ;  
A cowering glance they often cast,  
As deeper moans the gathering<sup>o</sup> blast.

My imps, though hardy, bold, and wild,  
As best befits the mountain child,  
Feel the sad influence of the hour,  
And wail the daisy's vanished flower, 40  
Their summer gambols tell, and mourn,  
And anxious ask, — Will spring return,  
And birds and lambs again be gay,  
And blossoms clothe the hawthorn spray ?

Yes, prattlers, yes. The daisy's flower  
Again shall paint your summer bower ;  
Again the hawthorn shall supply  
The garlands you delight to tie ;  
The lambs upon the lea shall bound,  
The wild birds carol to the round ; 50  
And, while you frolic light as they,  
Too short shall seem the summer dav.



To mute and to material things  
 New life revolving summer brings;  
 The genial call dead Nature hears,  
 And in her glory reappears.  
 But oh! my country's wintry state  
 What second spring shall renovate?  
 What powerful call shall bid arise  
 The buried warlike and the wise,  
 The mind that thought for Britain's weal,  
 The hand that grasped the victor steel?  
 The vernal sun new life bestows  
 Even on the meanest flower that blows;  
 But vainly, vainly may he shine  
 Where Glory weeps o'er NELSON's shrine,  
 And vainly pierce the solemn gloom  
 That shrouds, O PITT, thy hallowed tomb!

60

Deep graved in every British heart,  
 Oh, never let those names depart!  
 Say to your sons, — Lo, here his grave  
 Who victor died on Gadite° wave!  
 To him, as to the burning levin,  
 Short, bright, resistless course was given;  
 Where'er his country's foes were found,  
 Was heard the fated thunder's sound,  
 Till burst the bolt on yonder shore,  
 Rolled, blazed, destroyed, — and was no more

70

Nor mourn ye less his perished worth  
 Who bade the conqueror go forth,  
 And launched that thunderbolt of war  
 On Egypt, Hafnia,° Trafalgar;  
 Who, born to guide such high emprise,  
 For Britain's weal was early wise;

80

Alas! to whom the Almighty gave,  
 For Britain's sins, an early grave!  
 His worth who, in his mightiest hour,  
 A bauble held the pride of power,  
 Spurned at the sordid lust of pelf,  
 And served his Albion for herself; 90  
 Who, when the frantic crowd amain  
 Strained at subjection's bursting rein,  
 O'er their wild mood full conquest gained,  
 The pride, he would not crush, restrained,  
 Showed their fierce zeal a worthier cause,  
 And brought the freeman's arm to aid the freeman's laws.

Hadst thou but lived, though stripped of power,  
 A watchman on the lonely tower,  
 Thy thrilling trump had roused the land.  
 When fraud or danger were at hand; 100  
 By thee, as by the beacon-light,  
 Our pilots had kept course aright;  
 As some proud column, though alone,  
 Thy strength had propped the tottering throne.  
 Now is the stately column broke,  
 The beacon-light is quenched in smoke,  
 The trumpet's silver sound is still,  
 The warder silent on the hill!

Oh, think, how to his latest day,  
 When Death, just hovering, claimed his prey, 110  
 With Palinure's<sup>o</sup> unaltered mood,  
 Firm at his dangerous post he stood,  
 Each call for needful rest repelled,  
 With dying hand the rudder held,  
 Till, in his fall, with fateful sway,  
 The steerage of the realm gave way!

Then, while on Britain's thousand plains  
 One unpolluted church remains,  
 Whose peaceful bells ne'er sent around  
 The bloody tocsin's maddening sound,  
 But still, upon the hallowed day,  
 Convoke the swains to praise and pray ;  
 While faith and civil peace are dear,  
 Grace this cold marble with a tear,  
 He who preserved them, PITT, lies here.

126

Nor yet suppress the generous sigh  
 Because his rival<sup>o</sup> slumbers nigh,  
 Nor be thy *requiescat* dumb  
 Lest it be said o'er Fox's tomb ;  
 For talents mourn, untimely lost,  
 When best employed and wanted most ;  
 Mourn genius high, and lore profound,  
 And wit that loved to play, not wound ;  
 And all the reasoning powers divine,  
 To penetrate, resolve, combine ;  
 And feelings keen, and fancy's glow,  
 They sleep with him who sleeps below :  
 And, if thou mourn'st they could not save  
 From error him who owns this grave,  
 Be every harsher thought suppressed,  
 And sacred be the last long rest.

130

140

*Here*, where the end of earthly things  
 Lays heroes, patriots, bards, and kings ;  
 Where stiff the hand and still the tongue,  
 Of those who fought, and spoke, and sung ;  
*Here*, where the fretted aisles prolong  
 The distant notes of holy song,  
 As if some angel spoke again,  
 " All peace on earth, good-will to men ; "

If ever from an English heart, 150  
 Oh, *here* let prejudice depart,  
 And, partial feeling cast aside,  
 Record that Fox a Briton died!  
 When Europe crouched to France's yoke,  
 And Austria bent, and Prussia broke,  
 And the firm Russian's purpose brave  
 Was bartered by a timorous slave,  
 Even then dishonor's peace he spurned,  
 The sullied olive-branch returned,  
 Stood for his country's glory fast, 160  
 And nailed her colors to the mast!  
 Heaven, to reward his firmness, gave  
 A portion in this honored grave,  
 And ne'er held marble in its trust  
 Of two such wondrous men the dust.

With more than mortal powers endowed,  
 How high they soared above the crowd!  
 Theirs was no common party race,  
 Jostling by dark intrigue for place;  
 Like fabled Gods, their mighty war 170  
 Shook realms and nations in its jar;  
 Beneath each banner proud to stand,  
 Looked up the noblest of the land,  
 Till through the British world were known  
 The names of PITT and FOX alone.  
 Spells of such force no wizard grave  
 E'er framed in dark Thessalian cave,  
 Though his could drain the ocean dry,  
 And force the planets from the sky.  
 These spells are spent, and, spent with these, 180  
 The wine of life is on the lees,  
 Genius and taste and talent gone,



Forever tomed beneath the stone,  
Where — taming thought to human pride! —  
The mighty chiefs sleep side by side.  
Drop upon Fox's grave the tear,  
'T will trickle to his rival's bier;  
O'er PITT's the mournful requiem sound,  
And Fox's shall the notes rebound.  
The solemn echo seems to cry, —  
"Here let their discord with them die.  
Speak not for those a separate doom  
Whom Fate made brothers in the tomb;  
But search the land, of living men,  
Where wilt thou find their like again?"

190

Rest, ardent spirits, till the cries  
Of dying nature bid you rise!  
Not even your Britain's groans can pierce  
The leaden silence of your hearse;  
Then, oh, how impotent and vain  
This grateful tributary strain!  
Though not unmarked from northern clime,  
Ye heard the Border<sup>o</sup> Minstrel's rhyme:  
His Gothic harp has o'er you rung;  
The Bard you deigned to praise, your deathless names  
has sung.

200

Stay yet, illusion, stay a while,  
My wildered fancy still beguile!  
From this high theme how can I part  
Ere half unloaded is my heart!  
For all the tears e'er sorrow drew,  
And all the raptures fancy knew,  
And all the keener rush of blood  
That throbs through bard in bardlike mood,

210

Were here a tribute mean and low,  
 Though all their mingled streams could flow —  
 Woe, wonder, and sensation high,  
 In one spring-tide of ecstasy! —  
 It will not be — it may not last —  
 The vision of enchantment's past:  
 Like frostwork in the morning ray, 220  
 The fancy fabric melts away;  
 Each Gothic arch, memorial-stone,  
 And long, dim, lofty aisle, are gone;  
 And, lingering last, deception dear,  
 The choir's high sounds die on my ear.  
 Now slow return the lonely down,  
 The silent pastures bleak and brown,  
 The farm begirt with copsewood wild,  
 The gambols of each frolic child,  
 Mixing their shrill cries with the tone 230  
 Of Tweed's dark waters rushing on.

Prompt on unequal tasks to run,  
 Thus Nature disciplines her son:  
 Meeter, she says, for me to stray,  
 And waste the solitary day  
 In plucking from yon fen the reed,  
 And watch it floating down the Tweed,  
 Or idly list the shrilling lay  
 With which the milkmaid cheers her way,  
 Marking its cadence rise and fall, 240  
 As from the field, beneath her pail,  
 She trips it down the uneven dale;  
 Meeter for me, by yonder cairn,  
 The ancient shepherd's tale to learn,  
 Though oft he stop in rustic fear,  
 Lest his old legends tire the ear

Of one who, in his simple mind,  
May boast of book-learned taste refined.

But thou, my friend, canst fitly tell —  
For few have read romance so well — 250  
How still the legendary lay  
O'er poet's bosom holds its sway;  
How on the ancient minstrel strain  
Time lays his palsied hand in vain;  
And how our hearts at doughty deeds,  
By warriors wrought in steely weeds,  
Still throb for fear and pity's sake;  
As when the Champion of the Lake  
Enters Morgana's<sup>o</sup> fated house,  
Or in the Chapel Perilous, 260  
Despising spells and demons' force,  
Holds converse with the unburied corse;  
Or when, Dame Ganore's grace to move —  
Alas, that lawless was their love! —  
He sought proud Tarquin in his den,  
And freed full sixty knights; or when,  
A sinful man and unconfessed,  
He took the Sangreal's holy quest,  
And slumbering saw the vision high  
He might not view with waking eye. 270

The mightiest chiefs of British song  
Scorned not such legends to prolong.  
They gleam through Spenser's elfin dream,  
And mix in Milton's heavenly theme;  
And Dryden, in immortal strain,  
Had raised the Table Round again,  
But that a ribald king and court  
Bade him toil on, to make them sport;

Demanded for their niggard pay,  
 Fit for their souls, a looser lay, 280  
 Licentious satire, song, and play ;  
 The world defrauded of the high design,  
 Profaned the God-given strength, and marred the lofty  
 line.

Warmed by such names, well may we then,  
 Though dwindled sons of little men,  
 Essay to break a feeble lance  
 In the fair fields of old romance ;  
 Or seek the moated castle's cell,  
 Where long through talisman and spell,  
 While tyrants ruled and damsels wept, 290  
 Thy Genius, Chivalry, hath slept.  
 There sound the harpings of the North,  
 Till he awake and sally forth,  
 On venturous quest to prick again,  
 In all his arms, with all his train,  
 Shield, lance, and brand, and plume, and scarf,  
 Fay, giant, dragon, squire, and dwarf,  
 And wizard with his wand of might,  
 And errant maid on palfrey white.  
 Around the Genius weave their spells, 300  
 Pure Love, who scarce his passion tells ;  
 Mystery, half veiled and half revealed ;  
 And Honor, with his spotless shield ;  
 Attention, with fixed eye ; and Fear,  
 That loves the tale she shrinks to hear ;  
 And gentle Courtesy ; and Faith,  
 Unchanged by sufferings, time, or death ;  
 And valor, lion-mettled lord,  
 Leaning upon his own good sword.

Well has thy<sup>o</sup> fair achievement shown  
A worthy meed may thus be won :  
Ytene's<sup>o</sup> oaks — beneath whose shade  
Their theme the merry minstrels made,  
Of Ascapart,<sup>o</sup> and Bevis bold,  
And that Red King,<sup>o</sup> who, while of old  
Through Boldrewood the chase he led,  
By his loved huntsman's arrow bled —  
Ytene's oaks have heard again  
Renewed such legendary strain ;  
For thou hast sung, how he of Gaul,  
That Amadis<sup>o</sup> so famed in hall,  
For Oriana, foiled in fight  
The Necromancer's felon might ;  
And well in modern verse hast wove  
Partenopex's<sup>o</sup> mystic love :  
Hear, then, attentive to my lay,  
A knightly tale of Albion's elder day.

310

320



## CANTO FIRST

### THE CASTLE°

#### I

DAY set on Norham's castled steep,  
And Tweed's° fair river, broad and deep,  
    And Cheviot's° mountains lone ;  
The battled° towers, the donjon keep,  
The loophole grates where captives weep,  
The flanking walls that round it sweep,  
    In yellow lustre shone.  
The warriors on the turrets high,  
Moving athwart the evening sky,  
    Seemed forms of giant height ;  
Their armor, as it caught the rays,  
Flashed back again the western blaze  
    In lines of dazzling light.

10

#### II

Saint George's° banner, broad and gay,  
Now faded, as the fading ray  
    Less bright, and less, was flung ;  
The evening gale had scarce the power  
To wave it on the donjon tower,  
    So heavily it hung.  
The scouts had parted on their search,  
    The castle gates were barred ;  
Above the gloomy portal arch,

20

Timing his footsteps to a march,  
The warder kept his guard,  
Low humming, as he paced along,  
Some ancient Border<sup>o</sup> gathering song.

## III

A distant trampling sound he hears;  
He looks abroad, and soon appears,  
O'er Horncliff-hill,<sup>o</sup> a plump of spears  
    Beneath a pennon gay; 30  
A horseman, darting from the crowd  
Like lightning from a summer cloud,  
Spurs on his mettled courser proud,  
    Before the dark array.  
Beneath the sable palisade  
That closed the castle barricade,  
His bugle-horn he blew;  
The warder hasted from the wall,  
And warned the captain<sup>o</sup> in the hall,  
    For well the blast he knew; 40  
And joyfully that knight did call  
To sewer, squire, and seneschal.

## IV

“Now broach ye a pipe of Malvoisie,<sup>o</sup>  
Bring pasties of the doe,  
And quickly make the entrance free,  
And bid my heralds ready be,  
And every minstrel sound his glee,  
    And all our trumpets blow;  
And, from the platform, spare ye not  
To fire a noble salvo-shot;  
    Lord MARMION waits below!” 50

Then to the castle's lower ward  
 Sped forty yeomen tall,  
 The iron-studded gates unbarred,  
 Raised the porteullis's ponderous guard,  
 The lofty palisade unsparr'd,  
 And let the drawbridge° fall.

## V

Along the bridge Lord Marmion rode,  
 Proudly his red-roan charger trode,  
 His helm hung at the saddle bow ; 60  
 Well by his visage you might know  
 He was a stalworth knight and keen,  
 And had in many a battle been ;  
 The scar on his brown cheek revealed  
 A token true of Bosworth field ;  
 His eyebrow° dark and eye of fire  
 Showed spirit proud and prompt to ire,  
 Yet lines of thought upon his cheek  
 Did deep design and counsel speak.  
 His forehead, by his casque worn bare, 70  
 His thick moustache and curly hair,  
 Coal-black, and grizzled here and there,  
 But more through toil than age,  
 His square-turned joints and strength of limb  
 Showed him no carpet knight so trim,  
 But in close fight a champion grim,  
 In camps a leader° sage.

## VI

Well was he armed from head to heel,  
 In mail and plate of Milan° steel ;

But his strong helm, of mighty cost, 8c  
 Was all with burnished gold embossed.  
 Amid the plumage of the crest  
 A falcon hovered on her nest,  
 With wings outspread and forward breast:  
 E'en such a falcon, on his shield,  
 Soared sable in an azure field:  
 The golden legend bore aright,  
 "Who checks° at me, to death is dight."  
 Blue° was the charger's broidered rein;  
 Blue ribbons decked his arching mane; 9c  
 The knightly housing's ample fold  
 Was velvet blue and trapped with gold.

## VII

Behind him rode two gallant squires,  
 Of noble name and knightly sires;  
 They burned the gilded° spurs to claim,  
 For well could each a war-horse tame,  
 Could draw the bow, the sword could sway,  
 And lightly bear° the ring away;  
 Nor less with courteous precepts stored,  
 Could dance in hall, and carve at board, 10c  
 And frame love-ditties passing rare,  
 And sing them to a lady fair.

## VIII

Four men-at-arms came at their backs,  
 With halbert, bill, and battle-axe;  
 They bore Lord Marmion's lance so strong,  
 And led his sumpter-mules along,  
 And ambling° palfrey, when at need

Him listed° ease his battle-steed.  
 The last and trustiest of the four  
 On high his forky pennon bore; 110  
 Like swallow's tail in shape and hue,  
 Fluttered the streamer glossy blue,  
 Where, blazoned sable, as before,  
 The towering falcon seemed to soar.  
 Last, twenty yeomen, two and two,  
 In hosen° black and jerkins blue,  
 With falcons broidered on each breast,  
 Attended on their lord's behest.  
 Each, chosen for an archer good,  
 Knew hunting-craft by lake or wood; 120  
 Each one a six-foot bow could bend,  
 And far a cloth-yard° shaft could send;  
 Each held a boar-spear tough and strong,  
 And at their belts their quivers rung.  
 Their dusty° palfreys and array  
 Showed they had marched a weary way.

## IX

'T is meet that I should tell you now,  
 How fairly armed, and ordered how,  
     The soldiers of the guard,  
 With musket, pike, and morion, 130  
 To welcome noble Marmion,  
     Stood in the castle-yard;  
 Minstrels and trumpeters were there,  
 The gunner held his linstock yare,  
     For welcome-shot prepared:  
 Entered the train, and such a clang  
 As then through all his turrets rang  
     Old Norham never heard.



## X

The guards their morrice-pikes° advanced,  
The trumpets flourished brave, 140  
The cannon from the ramparts glanced,  
And thundering welcome gave.  
A blithe salute, in martial sort,  
The minstrels well might sound,  
For, as Lord Marmion crossed the court,  
He scattered angels round.  
“Welcome to Norham, Marmion!  
Stout heart and open hand!  
Well dost thou brook° thy gallant roan,  
Thou flower of English land!” 150

## XI

Two pursuivants, whom tabards° deck,  
With silver scutcheon round their neck,  
Stood on the steps of stone  
By which you reach the donjon gate,  
And there, with herald pomp and state,  
They hailed Lord Marmion:  
They hailed him Lord of Fontenaye°,  
Of Lutterward, and Scrivelbaye,  
Of Tamworth tower and town;  
And he, their courtesy to requite, 160  
Gave them a chain of twelve marks weight,  
All as he lighted down.  
“Now, largesse, largesse, Lord Marmion,  
Knight of the crest of gold!  
A blazoned shield, in battle won,  
Ne'er guarded heart so bold.”

## XII

They marshalled him to the castle-hall,  
 Where the guests stood all aside,  
 And loudly flourished the trumpet-call,  
 And the heralds° loudly cried, — 170  
 “Room, lordlings,° room for Lord Marmion.  
 With the crest and helm of gold!  
 Full well we know the trophies won  
 In the lists at Cottiswold:  
 There, vainly Ralph de Wilton° strove  
 ’Gainst Marmion’s force to stand;  
 To him he lost his lady-love,  
 And to the king his land.  
 Ourselves beheld the listed field,  
 A sight both sad and fair; 180  
 We saw Lord Marmion pierce his shield,  
 And saw his saddle bare;  
 We saw the victor win the crest  
 He wears with worthy pride,  
 And on the gibbet-tree, reversed,  
 His foeman’s scutcheon tied.  
 Place, nobles, for the Falcon-Knight!  
 Room, room, ye gentles gay,  
 For him who conquered in the right,  
 Marmion of Fontenaye!” 190

## XIII

Then stepped, to meet that noble lord,  
 Sir Hugh° the Heron bold,  
 Baron of Twisell and of Ford,  
 And Captain of the Hold;

He led Lord Marmion to the deas,  
 Raised o'er the pavement high,  
 And placed him in the upper place —  
 They feasted full and high :  
 The whiles a Northern harper rude  
 Chanted a rhyme° of deadly feud, 200  
 “How the fierce Thirwalls, and Bidleys all,  
 Stout Willimondswick,  
 And Hardriding Dick,  
 And Hughie of Hawdon, and Will o' the Wall,  
 Have set on Sir Albany Featherstonhaugh,  
 And taken his life at the Deadman's-shaw.”  
 Scantly Lord Marmion's ear could brook  
 The harper's barbarous lay,  
 Yet much he praised the pains he took,  
 And well those pains did pay ; 210  
 For lady's suit and minstrel's strain  
 By knight should ne'er be heard in vain.

## XIV

“Now, good Lord Marmion,” Heron says,  
 “Of your fair courtesy,  
 I pray you bide some little space  
 In this poor tower with me.  
 Here may you keep your arms° from rust,  
 May breathe your war-horse well ;  
 Seldom hath passed a week but joust  
 Or feat of arms befell. 220  
 The Scots can rein a mettled steed,  
 And love to couch a spear ;  
 Saint George! a stirring life they lead  
 That have such neighbors near !

Then stay with us a little space,  
 Our Northern wars to learn ;  
 I pray you for your lady's grace !"  
 Lord Marmion's brow grew stern.

## XV

The captain marked his altered look,  
 And gave the squire the sign ; 230  
 A mighty wassail-bowl he took,  
 And crowned it high with wine.  
 " Now pledge me here, Lord Marmion ;  
 But first I pray thee fair,  
 Where hast thou left that page<sup>o</sup> of thine  
 That used to serve thy cup of wine,  
 Whose beauty was so rare ?  
 When last in Raby-towers we met,  
 The boy I closely eyed,  
 And often marked his cheeks were wet 240  
 With tears he fain would hide.  
 His was no rugged horse-boy's hand,  
 To burnish shield or sharpen brand,  
 Or saddle battle-steed,  
 But meeter seemed for lady fair,  
 To fan her cheek, or curl her hair,  
 Or through embroidery, rich and rare,  
 The slender silk to lead ;  
 His skin was fair, his ringlets gold,  
 His bosom — when he sighed, 250  
 The russet doublet's rugged fold  
 Could scarce repel its pride !  
 Say, hast thou given that lovely youth  
 To serve in lady's bower ?

Or was the gentle page, in sooth,  
A gentle paramour?"

## XVI

Lord Marmion ill could brook such jest;  
He rolled his kindling eye,  
With pain his rising wrath suppressed,  
Yet made a calm reply : 26c  
"That boy thou thought so goodly fair,  
He might not brook the Northern air.  
More of his fate if thou wouldst learn,  
I left him sick in Lindisfarn.<sup>o</sup>  
Enough of him. — But, Heron, say,  
Why does thy lovely lady gay  
Disdain to grace the hall to-day?  
Or has that dame, so fair and sage,  
Gone on some pious pilgrimage?" —  
He spoke in covert scorn, for fame 27c  
Whispered light tales of Heron's dame.

## XVII

Unmarked, at least unrecked, the taunt,  
Careless the knight replied :  
"No bird whose feathers gaily flaunt  
Delights in cage to bide ;  
Norham is grim and grated close,  
Hemmed in by battlement and fosse,  
And many a darksome tower,  
And better loves my lady bright  
To sit in liberty and light 28c  
In fair Queen Margaret's bower<sup>o</sup>.



We hold our greyhound in our hand,  
 Our falcon on our glove,  
 But where shall we find leash or band  
 For dame that loves to rove ?  
 Let the wild falcon soar her swing,  
 She'll stoop when she has tired her wing." —

## XVIII

"Nay, if with Royal James's bride  
 The lovely Lady Heron bide,  
 Behold me here a messenger, 295  
 Your tender greetings prompt to bear;  
 For, to the Scottish court addressed,  
 I journey at our king's behest,  
 And pray you, of your grace, provide  
 For me and mine a trusty guide.  
 I have not ridden in Scotland since  
 James backed the cause of that mock prince,  
 Warbeck, that Flemish counterfeit,  
 Who on the gibbet paid the cheat.  
 Then did I march with Surrey's power, 300  
 What time we razed old Ayton tower." —

## XIX

"For such-like need, my lord, I trow,  
 Norham can find you guides enow;  
 For here be some have pricked as far  
 On Scottish ground as to Dunbar,  
 Have drunk the monks of Saint Bothan's ale  
 And driven the beeves of Lauderdale,  
 Harried the wives of Greenlaw's goods,  
 And given them light<sup>o</sup> to set their hoods." —

## XX

"Now, in good sooth," Lord Marmion cried, 310  
 "Were I in warlike wise to ride,  
 A better guard I would not lack  
 Than your stout forayers at my back;  
 But as in form of peace I go,  
 A friendly messenger, to know  
 Why, through all Scotland, near and far,  
 Their king is mustering troops for war,  
 The sight of plundering Border spears  
 Might justify suspicious fears,  
 And deadly feud or thirst of spoil 320  
 Break out in some unseemly broil.  
 A herald were my fitting guide;  
 Or friar, sworn in peace to bide;  
 Or pardoner, or travelling priest,  
 Or strolling pilgrim, at the least."

## XXI

The captain mused a little space,  
 And passed his hand across his face. —  
 "Fain would I find the guide you want,  
 But ill may spare a pursuivant,  
 The only men that safe can ride 330  
 Mine errands on the Scottish side:  
 And though a bishop built this fort,  
 Few holy brethren here resort;  
 Even our good chaplain, as I ween,  
 Since our last siege we have not seen.  
 The mass he might not sing or say  
 Upon one stinted meal a-day;  
 So, safe he sat in Durham aisle,

And prayed for our success the while.  
 Our Norham vicar, woe betide, 34<sup>c</sup>  
 Is all too° well in case to ride;  
 The priest of Shoreswood° — he could rein  
 The wildest war-horse in your train,  
 But then no spearman in the hall  
 Will sooner swear, or stab, or brawl.  
 Friar John of Tillmouth were the man;  
 A blithesome brother at the can,  
 A welcome guest in hall and bower,  
 He knows each castle, town, and tower,  
 In which the wine and ale is good, 35<sup>o</sup>  
 'Twixt Newcastle and Holy-Rood.  
 But that good man, as ill befalls,  
 Hath seldom left our castle walls,  
 Since, on the vigil of Saint Bede,  
 In evil hour he crossed the Tweed  
 To teach Dame Allison her creed.  
 Old Bughtrig found him with his wife,  
 And John, an enemy to strife,  
 Sans frock and hood, fled for his life.  
 The jealous churl hath deeply swore 36<sup>o</sup>  
 That, if again he ventured o'er,  
 He shall shrieve° penitent no more.  
 Little he loves such risks, I know,  
 Yet in your guard perchance will go."

## XXII

Young Selby, at the fair hall-board,  
 Carved to his uncle and that lord,  
 And reverently took up the word:  
 "Kind uncle, woe were we each one,  
 If harm should hap to brother John.

He is a man of mirthful speech,  
 Can many a game and gambol teach;  
 Full well at tables can he play,  
 And sweep at bowls the stake away.  
 None can a lustier carol bawl,  
 The needfullest among us all,  
 When time hangs heavy in the hall,  
 And snow comes thick at Christmas tide,  
 And we can neither hunt nor ride  
 A foray on the Scottish side.

37<sup>o</sup>

The vowed revenge of Bughtrig rude  
 May end in worse than loss of hood.  
 Let Friar John in safety still  
 In chimney-corner snore his fill,  
 Roast hissing<sup>o</sup> crabs, or flagons swill;  
 Last night, to Norham there came one  
 Will better guide Lord Marmion." —  
 "Nephew," quoth Heron, "by my fay,  
 Well hast thou spoke; say forth thy say." —

38<sup>o</sup>

## XXIII

"Here is a holy Palmer<sup>o</sup> come,  
 From Salem<sup>o</sup> first, and last from Rome;  
 One that hath kissed the blessed tomb,  
 And visited each holy shrine  
 In Araby and Palestine;  
 On hills of Armenie hath been,  
 Where Noah's ark may yet be seen;  
 By that Red Sea, too, hath he trod,  
 Which parted at the Prophet's rod;  
 In Sinai's wilderness he saw  
 The Mount where Israel heard the law,  
 Mid thunder-dint, and flashing levin,

39<sup>o</sup>40<sup>o</sup>

And shadows, mists, and darkness, given.  
 He shows St. James's cockle-shell,  
 Of fair Montserrat, too, can tell ;  
 And of that Grot where Olives nod,  
 Where, darling of each heart and eye,  
 From all the youth of Sicily,  
 Saint Rosalie retired to God.

## XXIV

“To stout Saint George of Norwich merry,  
 Saint Thomas, too, of Canterbury,  
 Cuthbert of Durham and Saint Bede,  
 For his sins' pardon hath he prayed.  
 He knows the passes of the North,  
 And seeks far shrines beyond the Forth ;  
 Little he eats, and long will wake,  
 And drinks but of the stream or lake.  
 This were a guide o'er moor and dale ;  
 But when our John hath quaffed his ale,  
 As little as the wind that blows,  
 And warms itself against his nose,  
 Kens he, or cares, which way he goes.” —

## XXV

“Gramercy !” quoth Lord Marmion,  
 “Full loath were I that Friar John,  
 That venerable man, for me  
 Were placed in fear or jeopardy :  
 If this same Palmer will me lead  
 From hence to Holy-Rood,  
 Like his good saint, I'll pay his meed,  
 Instead of cockle-shell or bead,  
 With angels fair and good.



I love such holy rambles; still  
They know to charm a weary hill

43<sup>o</sup>

With song, romance, or lay:  
Some jovial tale, or glee, or jest,  
Some lying legend, at the least,  
They bring to cheer the way." —

## XXVI

"Ah! noble sir," young Selby said,  
And finger on his lip he laid,  
"This man knows much, perchance e'en more  
Than he could learn by holy lore.  
Still to himself he's muttering,  
And shrinks as at some unseen thing.  
Last night we listened at his cell;  
Strange sounds we heard, and, sooth to tell,  
He murmured on till morn, how'er  
No living mortal could be near.  
Sometimes I thought I heard it plain,  
As other voices spoke again.  
I cannot tell — I like it not —  
Friar John hath told us it is wrote,  
No conscience clear and void of wrong  
Can rest awake and pray so long.  
Himself still sleeps before his beads  
Have marked ten aves and two creeds." —

44<sup>c</sup>45<sup>o</sup>

## XXVII

"Let pass," quoth Marmion; "by my fay,  
This man shall guide me on my way,  
Although the great arch-fiend and he  
Had sworn themselves of company.  
So please you, gentle youth, to call

This Palmer to the castle-hall."  
 The summoned Palmer came in place: 463  
 His sable cowl o'erhung his face;  
 In his black mantle was he clad,  
 With Peter's keys, in cloth of red,  
 On his broad shoulders wrought;  
 The scallop shell his cap did deck;  
 The crucifix around his neck  
 Was from Loretto brought;  
 His sandals were with travel tore,  
 Staff, budget, bottle, scrip, he wore;  
 The faded palm-branch in his hand 470  
 Showed pilgrim from the Holy Land.

## XXVIII

Whenas the Palmer<sup>o</sup> came in hall,  
 Nor lord nor knight was there more tall,  
 Or had a statelier step withal,  
 Or looked more high and keen;  
 For no saluting did he wait,  
 But strode across the hall of state,  
 And fronted Marmion where he sate,  
 As he his peer had been.  
 But his gaunt frame was worn with toil; 483  
 His cheek was sunk, alas the while!  
 And when he struggled at a smile  
 His eye looked haggard wild:  
 Poor wretch, the mother that him bare,  
 If she had been in presence there,  
 In his wan face and sunburnt hair  
 She had not known her child.  
 Danger, long travel, want, or woe,

Soon change the form that best we know —  
 For deadly fear can time outgo,  
 And blanch at once the hair ;  
 Hard toil can roughen form and face,  
 And want can quench the eye's bright grace,  
 Nor does old age a wrinkle trace  
 More deeply than despair.  
 Happy whom none of these befall,  
 But this poor Palmer knew them all.

490

## XXIX

Lord Marmion then his boon did ask ;  
 The Palmer took on him the task,  
 So he would march with morning tide,  
 To Scottish court to be his guide.

" But I have solemn vows to pay,  
 And may not linger by the way,  
 To fair Saint Andrew's bound,  
 Within the ocean-cave to pray,  
 Where good Saint Rule his holy lay,  
 From midnight to the dawn of day,  
 Sung to the billows' sound ;  
 Thence to Saint Fillan's blessed well,  
 Whose spring can frenzied dreams dispel,  
 And the crazed brain restore.

Saint Mary grant that cave or spring  
 Could back to peace my bosom bring,  
 Or bid it throb no more ! "

500

510

## XXX

And now the midnight draught of sleep,  
 Where wine and spices richly steep,

In massive bowl of silver deep,  
     The page presents on knee.  
 Lord Marmion drank a fair good rest,  
 The captain pledged his noble guest, 520  
 The cup went through among the rest,  
     Who drained it merrily ;  
 Alone the Palmer passed it by,  
 Though Selby pressed him courteously.  
 This was a sign the feast was o'er ;  
 It hushed the merry wassail roar,  
     The minstrels ceased to sound.  
 Soon in the castle nought was heard  
 But the slow footstep of the guard  
     Pacing his sober round. 530

## XXXI

With early dawn Lord Marmion rose :  
 And first the chapel doors unclose ;  
 Then, after morning rites were done —  
 A hasty mass from Friar John —  
 And knight and squire had broke their fast  
 On rich substantial repast,  
 Lord Marmion's bugles blew to horse.  
 Then came the stirrup cup in course :  
 Between the baron and his host,  
 No point of courtesy was lost ; 540  
 High thanks were by Lord Marmion paid,  
 Solemn excuse the captain made,  
 Till, filing from the gate, had passed  
 That noble train, their lord the last.  
 Then loudly rung the trumpet call ;  
 Thundered the cannon from the wall,  
     And shook the Scottish shore ;

Around the castle eddied slow  
Volumes of smoke as white as snow  
And hid its turrets hoar,  
Till they rolled forth upon the air,  
And met the river breezes there,  
Which gave again the prospect fair.

550

D



## INTRODUCTION TO CANTO SECOND

TO THE REV. JOHN MARRIOT,° A.M.

*Ashestiel, Ettrick Forest.*

THE scenes° are desert now and bare,  
Where flourished once a forest fair,  
When these waste glens with copse were lined,  
And peopled with the hart and hind.  
Yon thorn° — perchance whose prickly spears  
Have fenced him for three hundred years,  
While fell around his green compeers —  
Yon lonely thorn, would he could tell  
The changes of his parent dell,  
Since he, so gray and stubborn now, 10  
Waved in each breeze a sapling bough!  
Would he could tell how deep the shade  
A thousand mingled branches made;  
How broad the shadows of the oak,  
How ciung the rowan to the rock,  
And through the foliage showed his head,  
With narrow leaves and berries red;  
What pines on every mountain sprung  
O'er every dell what birches hung,  
In every breeze what aspens shook, 20  
What alders shaded every brook!

“Here, in my shade,” methinks he'd say,  
“The mighty stag at noontide lay;

The wolf I've seen, a fiercer game,—  
The neighboring dingle bears his name,—  
With lurching step around me prowl,  
And stop, against the moon to howl;  
The mountain-boar, on battle set,  
His tusks upon my stem would whet;  
While doe, and roe, and red-deer good, 30  
Have bounded by through gay greenwood.  
Then oft from Newark's riven tower  
Sallied a Scottish monarch's power:  
A thousand vassals mustered round,  
With horse, and hawk, and horn, and hound;  
And I might see the youth intent  
Guard every pass with cross-bow bent;  
And through the brake the rangers stalk,  
And falconers hold the ready hawk;  
And foresters, in greenwood trim, 40  
Lead in the leash the gazehounds grim,  
Attentive, as the bratchet's bay  
From the dark covert drove the prey,  
To slip them as he broke away.  
The startled quarry bounds amain,  
As fast the gallant greyhounds strain;  
Whistles the arrow from the bow,  
Answers the harquebuss below;  
While all the rocking hills reply  
To hoof-clang, hound, and hunters' cry, 50  
And bugles ringing lightsomely."

Of such proud huntings many tales  
Yet linger in our lonely dales,  
Up pathless Ettrick and on Yarrow,  
Where erst the outlaw drew his arrow.  
But not more blithe that sylvan court

Than we have been at humbler sport ;  
 Though small our pomp and mean our game,  
 Our mirth, dear Marriot, was the same.  
 Remember'st thou my greyhounds true? 50  
 O'er holt or hill there never flew,  
 From slip or leash there never sprang,  
 More fleet of foot or sure of fang.  
 Nor dull, between each merry chase,  
 Passed by the intermitted space ;  
 For we had fair resource in store,  
 In classic and in Gothic lore :  
 We marked each memorable scene,  
 And held poetic talk between ;  
 Nor hill, nor brook, we paced along, 70  
 But had its legend or its song.  
 All silent now — for now are still  
 Thy bowers, untenanted<sup>o</sup> Bowhill!  
 No longer from thy mountains dun  
 The yeoman hears the well-known gun,  
 And while his honest heart glows warm  
 At thought of his paternal farm,  
 Round to his mates a brimmer fills,  
 And drinks, " The Chieftain of the Hills !"  
 No fairy forms, in Yarrow's bowers, 80  
 Trip o'er the walks or tend the flowers,  
 Fair as the elves whom Janet saw  
 By moonlight dance on Carterhaugh ;  
 No youthful<sup>o</sup> Baron's left to grace  
 The Forest-Sheriff's lonely chace,  
 And ape, in manly step and tone,  
 The majesty of Oberon :  
 And she is gone whose lovely face  
 Is but her least and lowest grace ;  
 Though if to Sylphid Queen 't were given 90

To show our earth the charms of heaven,  
She could not glide along the air  
With form more light or face more fair.  
No more the widow's deafened ear  
Grows quick that lady's step to hear :  
At noontide she expects her not,  
Nor busies her to trim the cot ;  
Pensive she turns her humming wheel,  
Or pensive cooks her orphans' meal,  
Yet blesses, ere she deals their bread,  
The gentle hand by which they 're fed.

100

From Yair — which hills so closely bind,  
Scarce can the Tweed his passage find,  
Though much he fret, and chafe, and toil,  
Till all his eddying currents boil —  
Her long-descended<sup>o</sup> lord is gone,  
And left us by the stream alone.  
And much I miss those sportive boys,  
Companions of my mountain joys,  
Just at the age 'twixt boy and youth,  
When thought is speech, and speech is truth.  
Close to my side with what delight  
They pressed to hear of Wallace wight,  
When, pointing to his airy mound,  
I called his ramparts holy ground !  
Kindled their brows to hear me speak ;  
And I have smiled to feel my cheek,  
Despite the difference of our years,  
Return again the glow of theirs.  
Ah, happy boys ! such feelings pure,  
They will not, cannot long endure ;  
Condemned to stem the world's rude tide,  
You may not linger by the side ;

110

120

For Fate shall thrust you from the shore,  
 And Passion ply the sail and oar.  
 Yet cherish the remembrance still  
 Of the lone mountain and the rill;  
 For trust, dear boys, the time will come,  
 When fiercer transport shall be dumb,  
 And you will think right frequently,  
 But, well I hope, without a sigh,  
 On the free hours that we have spent  
 Together on the brown hill's bent.

130

When, musing on companions gone,  
 We doubly feel ourselves alone,  
 Something, my friend, we yet may gain;  
 There is a pleasure in this pain:  
 It soothes the love of lonely rest,  
 Deep in each gentler heart impressed.  
 'T is silent amid worldly toils,  
 And stifled soon by mental broils;  
 But, in a bosom thus prepared,  
 Its still small voice is often heard,  
 Whispering a mingled sentiment  
 'Twixt resignation and content.  
 Oft in my mind such thoughts awake  
 By lone Saint Mary's° silent lake:  
 Thou know'st it well, — nor fen nor sedge  
 Pollute the pure lake's crystal edge;  
 Abrupt and sheer, the mountains sink  
 At once upon the level brink,  
 And just a trace of silver sand  
 Marks where the water meets the land.  
 Far in the mirror, bright and blue,  
 Each hill's huge outline you may view;  
 Shaggy with heath, but lonely bare,

140

150



Nor tree, nor bush, nor brake is there,  
Save where of land yon slender line  
Bears thwart the lake the scattered pine.  
Yet even this nakedness has power, 160  
And aids the feeling of the hour:  
Nor thicket, dell, nor copse you spy,  
Where living thing concealed might lie;  
Nor point retiring hides a dell  
Where swain or woodman lone might dwell.  
There 's nothing left to fancy's guess,  
You see that all is loneliness:  
And silence aids — though the steep hills  
Send to the lake a thousand rills;  
In summer tide so soft they weep, 170  
The sound but lulls the ear asleep;  
Your horse's hoof-tread sounds too rude,  
So stilly is the solitude.

Nought living meets the eye or ear,  
But well I ween the dead are near;  
For though, in feudal strife, a foe  
Hath laid Our Lady's chapel low,  
Yet still, beneath the hallowed soil,  
The peasant rests him from his toil,  
And dying bids his bones be laid 180  
Where erst his simple fathers prayed.

If age had tamed the passions' strife,  
And fate had cut my ties to life,  
Here have I thought 't were sweet to dwell,  
And rear again the chaplain's cell,  
Like that same peaceful hermitage,  
Where Milton longed to spend his age.  
'T were sweet to mark the setting day

On Bourhope's lonely top decay,  
And, as it faint and feeble died 19c  
On the broad lake and mountain's side,  
To say, "Thus pleasures fade away ;  
Youth, talents, beauty, thus decay,  
And leave us dark, forlorn, and gray ;"  
Then gaze on Dryhope's ruined tower,  
And think on Yarrow's faded Flower :  
And when that mountain-sound I heard,  
Which bids us be for storm prepared,  
The distant rustling of his wings,  
As up his force the Tempest brings, 20c  
'T were sweet, ere yet his terrors rave,  
To sit upon the Wizard's grave,  
That Wizard Priest's whose bones are thrust  
From company of holy dust ;  
On which no sunbeam ever shines —  
So superstition's creed divines —  
Thence view the lake with sullen roar  
Heave her broad billows to the shore ;  
And mark the wild-swans mount the gale,  
Spread wide through mist their snowy sail, 21c  
And ever stoop again, to lave  
Their bosoms on the surging wave ;  
Then, when against the driving hail  
No longer might my plaid avail,  
Back to my lonely home retire,  
And light my lamp and trim my fire ;  
There ponder o'er some mystic lay,  
Till the wild tale had all its sway,  
And, in the bittern's distant shriek,  
I heard unearthly voices speak, 22c  
And thought the Wizard Priest was come  
To claim again his ancient home !

And bade my busy fancy range,  
To frame him fitting shape and strange,  
Till from the task my brow I cleared,  
And smiled to think that I had feared.

But chief 't were sweet to think such life —  
Though but escape from fortune's strife —  
Something most matchless good and wise,  
A great and grateful sacrifice, 230  
And deem each hour to musing given  
A step upon the road to heaven.

Yet him whose heart is ill at ease  
Such peaceful solitudes displease;  
He loves to drown his bosom's jar  
Amid the elemental war:  
And my black Palmer's choice had been  
Some ruder and more savage scene,  
Like that which frowns round dark Loch-skene.  
There eagles scream from isle to shore; 240  
Down all the rocks the torrents roar;  
O'er the black waves incessant driven,  
Dark mists infect the summer heaven;  
Through the rude barriers of the lake,  
Away its hurrying waters break,  
Faster and whiter dash and curl,  
Till down yon dark abyss they hurl.  
Rises the fog-smoke white as snow,  
Thunders the viewless stream below,  
Diving, as if condemned to lave 250  
Some demon's subterranean cave,  
Who, prisoned by enchanter's spell,  
Shakes the dark rock with groan and yell.

And well that Palmer's form and mien  
Had suited with the stormy scene,  
Just on the edge, straining his ken  
To view the bottom of the den,  
Where, deep deep down, and far within,  
Toils with the rocks the roaring linn;  
Then, issuing forth one foamy wave,  
And wheeling round the Giant's Grave,  
White as the snowy charger's tail,  
Drives down the pass of Moffatdale.

26c

Marriot, thy harp,° on Isis strung,  
To many a Border theme has rung:  
Then list to me, and thou shalt know  
Of this mysterious Man of Woe.

## CANTO SECOND

### THE CONVENT

#### I

THE breeze° which swept away the smoke

Round Norham Castle rolled,  
When all the loud artillery spoke  
With lightning-flash and thunder-stroke,

As Marmion left the hold, —  
It curled not Tweed alone, that breeze,  
For, far upon Northumbrian seas,

It freshly blew and strong,  
Where, from high Whitby's cloistered pile,  
Bound to Saint Cuthbert's Holy Isle,

It bore a bark° along.

Upon the gale she stooped her side,  
And bounded o'er the swelling tide,

As she were dancing home;  
The merry seamen laughed to see  
Their gallant ship so lustily

Furrow the green sea-foam.

Much joyed they in their honored freight;

For on the deck, in chair of state,  
The Abbess of Saint Hilda placed,

With five fair nuns, the galley graced.

#### II

'T was sweet to see these holy maids,  
Like birds escaped to greenwood shades,  
Their first flight from the cage,



How timid, and how curious too,  
 For all to them was strange and new,  
 And all the common sights they view  
     Their wonderment engage.  
 One eyed the shrouds and swelling sail,  
     With many a benedicite; 3c  
 One at the rippling surge grew pale,  
     And would for terror pray,  
 Then shrieked because the sea-dog nigh  
 His round black head and sparkling eye  
     Reared o'er the foaming spray;  
 And one would still adjust her veil,  
 Disordered by the summer gale,  
 Perchance lest some more worldly eye  
 Her dedicated charms might spy,  
 Perchance because such action graced 4c  
 Her fair-turned arm and slender waist.  
 Light was each simple bosom there,  
 Save two, who ill might pleasure share,—  
 The Abbess and the Novice Clare.

## III

The Abbess was of noble blood,  
 But early took the veil and hood,  
 Ere upon life she cast a look,  
 Or knew the world that she forsook.  
 Fair too she was, and kind had been  
 As she was fair, but ne'er had seen 5c  
 For her a timid lover sigh,  
 Nor knew the influence of her eye.  
 Love to her ear was but a name,  
 Combined with vanity and shame;

Her hopes, her fears, her joys, were all  
Bounded within the cloister wall;  
The deadliest sin her mind could reach  
Was of monastic rule the breach,  
And her ambition's highest aim  
To emulate Saint Hilda's fame.  
For this she gave her ample dower  
To raise the convent's eastern tower;  
For this, with carving rare and quaint,  
She decked the chapel of the saint,  
And gave the relic-shrine of cost,  
With ivory and gems embossed.  
The poor her convent's bounty blest,  
The pilgrim in its halls found rest.

6c

## IV

Black was her garb, her rigid rule  
Reformed on Benedictine school;  
Her cheek was pale, her form was spare;  
Vigils and penitence austere  
Had early quenched the light of youth:  
But gentle was the dame, in sooth;  
Though, vain of her religious sway,  
She loved to see her maids obey,  
Yet nothing stern was she in cell,  
And the nuns loved their Abbess well.  
Sad was this voyage to the dame;  
Summoned to Lindisfarn, she came,  
There, with Saint Cuthbert's Abbot old  
And Tynemouth's Prioress, to hold  
A chapter of Saint Benedict,  
For inquisition stern and strict

7c

8c

On two apostates from the faith,  
And, if need were, to doom to death.

## V

Nought say I here of Sister Clare,  
Save this, that she was young and fair;  
As yet a novice unprofessed,  
Lovely and gentle, but distressed.<sup>o</sup>  
She was betrothed to one now dead,  
Or worse, who had dishonored fled.  
Her kinsman bade her give her hand  
To one who loved her for her land;  
Herself, almost heart-broken now,  
Was bent to take the vestal vow,  
And shroud within Saint Hilda's gloom  
Her blasted hopes and withered bloom.

90

## VI

She sate upon the galley's prow,  
And seemed to mark the waves below;  
Nay, seemed, so fixed her look and eye,  
To count them as they glided by.  
She saw them not — 't was seeming all —  
Far other scene her thoughts recall, —  
A sun-scorched desert, waste and bare,  
Nor waves nor breezes murmured there;  
There saw she where some careless hand  
O'er a dead corpse had heaped the sand.  
To hide it till the jackals come  
To tear it from the scanty tomb. —  
See what a woful look was given,  
As she raised up her eyes to heaven!

100

110

## VII

Lovely, and gentle, and distressed —  
These charms might tame the fiercest breast :  
Harpers have sung and poets° told  
That he, in fury uncontrolled,  
The shaggy monarch of the wood,  
Before a virgin, fair and good,  
Hath pacified his savage mood.  
But passions in the human frame  
Oft put the lion's rage to shame ;  
And jealousy, by dark intrigue,  
With sordid avarice in league,  
Had practised° with their bowl and knife  
Against the mourner's harmless life.  
This crime was charged 'gainst those who lay  
Prisoned in Cuthbert's islet gray.

120

## VIII

And now the vessel skirts the strand  
Of mountainous Northumberland ;  
Towns, towers, and halls successive rise,  
And catch the nuns' delighted eyes.  
Monk-Wearmouth soon behind them lay,  
And Tynemcuth's priory and bay ;  
They marked amid her trees the hall  
Of lofty Seaton-Delaval ;  
They saw the Blythe and Wansbeck floods  
Rush to the sea through sounding woods ;  
They passed the tower of Widderington,  
Mother of many a valiant son ;  
At Coquet-isle their beads they tell  
To the good saint who owned the cell ;

130

140

Then did the Alne attention claim,  
 And Warkworth, proud of Percy's name;  
 And next they crossed themselves to hear  
 The whitening breakers sound so near,  
 Where, boiling through the rocks, they roar  
 On Dunstanborough's caverned shore;  
 Thy tower, proud Bamborough, marked they there,  
 King Ida's castle, huge and square,  
 From its tall rock look grimly down, 150  
 And on the swelling ocean frown;  
 Then from the coast they bore away,  
 And reached the Holy Island's bay.

## IX

The tide did now its flood-mark gain,  
 And girdled in the Saint's domain;  
 For, with the flow and ebb, its style  
 Varies from continent to isle:  
 Dry shod, o'er sands, twice every day  
 The pilgrims to the shrine find way;  
 Twice every day the waves efface 160  
 Of staves and sandalled feet the trace.  
 As to the port the galley flew,  
 Higher and higher rose to view  
 The castle with its battled walls,  
 The ancient monastery's halls,  
 A solemn, huge, and dark-red pile,  
 Placed on the margin of the isle.

## X

In Saxon strength that abbey frowned,  
 With massive arches broad and round,  
 That rose alternate, row and row, 170



On ponderous columns, short and low,  
Built ere the art was known,  
By pointed aisle and shafted stalk  
The arcades of an alleyed walk  
To emulate in stone.

On the deep walls the heathen Dane  
Had poured his impious rage in vain ;  
And needful was such strength to these,  
Exposed to the tempestuous seas,  
Scourged by the winds' eternal sway, 18c  
Open to rovers fierce as they,  
Which could twelve hundred years withstand  
Winds, waves, and northern pirates' hand.  
Not but that portions of the pile,  
Rebuilt in a later style,  
Showed where the spoiler's hand had been ;  
Not but the wasting sea-breeze keen  
Had worn the pillar's carving quaint,  
And mouldered in his niche the saint,  
And rounded with consuming power 19c  
The pointed angles of each tower ;  
Yet still entire the abbey stood,  
Like veteran, worn, but unsubdued.

## XI

Soon as they neared his turrets strong,  
The maidens raised Saint Hilda's song,  
And with the sea-wave and the wind  
Their voices, sweetly shrill, combined,  
And made harmonious close ;  
Then, answering from the sandy shore,  
Half-drowned amid the breakers' roar, 20c  
According chorus rose :

Down to the haven of the Isle  
 The monks and nuns in order file  
     From Cuthbert's cloisters grim ;  
 Banner, and cross, and relics there,  
 To meet Saint Hilda's maids, they bare ;  
 And, as they caught the sounds on air,  
     They echoed back the hymn.  
 The islanders in joyous mood  
 Rushed emulously through the flood 210  
     To hale the bark to land ;  
 Conspicuous by her veil and hood,  
 Signing the cross, the Abbess stood,  
     And blessed them with her hand.

## XII

Suppose we now the welcome said,  
 Suppose the convent banquet made :  
     All through the holy dome,  
 Through cloister, aisle, and gallery,  
 Wherever vestal maid might pry,  
 Nor risk to meet unhallowed eye, 220  
     The stranger sisters roam ;  
 Till fell the evening damp with dew,  
 And the sharp sea-breeze coldly blew,  
 For there even summer night is chill.  
 Then, having strayed and gazed their fill,  
     They closed around the fire ;  
 And all, in turn, essayed to paint  
 The rival merits of their saint,  
     A theme that ne'er can tire  
 A holy maid, for be it known 230  
     That their saint's honor is their own.

## XIII

Then Whitby's nuns exulting told  
How to their house three barons bold  
Must menial service do,  
While horns blow out a note of shame,  
And monks cry, "Fie upon your name!  
In wrath, for loss of sylvan game,  
Saint Hilda's priest ye slew."—  
"This, on Ascension-day, each year,  
While laboring on our harbor-pier,  
Must Herbert, Bruce, and Percy hear."—  
They told how in their convent-cell  
A Saxon princess once did dwell,  
The lovely Edelfled:  
And how, of thousand snakes, each one  
Was changed into a coil of stone  
When Holy Hilda prayed;  
Themselves, within their holy bound,  
Their stony<sup>o</sup> folds had often found.  
They told how sea-fowls' pinions fail,  
As over Whitby's towers they sail,  
And, sinking down, with flutterings faint,  
They do their homage to the saint.

240

250

## XIV

Nor did Saint Cuthbert's daughters fail  
To vie with these in holy tale;  
His body's resting-place, of old,  
How oft their patron changed, they told;  
How, when the rude Dane burned their pile,  
The monks fled forth from Holy Isle;

O'er Northern mountain, marsh, and moor, 260  
 From sea to sea, from shore to shore,  
 Seven years Saint Cuthbert's corpse they bore.

They rested them in fair Melrose;  
 But though, alive, he loved it well,  
 Not there his relics might repose;  
 For, wondrous tale to tell!

In his stone coffin forth he rides,  
 A ponderous bark for river tides,  
 Yet light as gossamer it glides  
 Downward to Tilmouth cell. 270

Nor long was his abiding there,  
 For southward did the saint repair;  
 Chester-le-Street and Ripon saw  
 His holy corpse ere Wardilaw

Hailed him with joy and fear;  
 And, after many wanderings past,  
 He chose his lordly seat at last  
 Where his cathedral, huge and vast,  
 Looks down upon the Wear.

There, deep in Durham's Gothic shade, 280  
 His relics<sup>o</sup> are in secret laid;

But none may know the place,  
 Save of his holiest servants three,  
 Deep sworn to solemn secrecy,  
 Who share that wondrous grace.

## XV

Who may his miracles declare?  
 Even Scotland's dauntless king and heir —

Although with them they led  
 Galwegians,<sup>o</sup> wild as ocean's gale,  
 And Lodon's knights, all sheathed in mail, 290

And the bold men of Teviotdale —  
 Before his standard fled.  
 'T was he, to vindicate his reign,  
 Edged Alfred's falchion on the Dane,  
 And turned the Conqueror back again,  
 When, with his Norman bowyer band,  
 He came to waste Northumberland.

## XVI

But fain Saint Hilda's nuns would learn  
 If on a rock, by Lindisfarn,  
 Saint Cuthbert sits, and toils to frame 300  
 The sea-born beads that bear his name :  
 Such tales had Whitby's fishers told,  
 And said they might his shape behold,  
 And hear his anvil<sup>o</sup> sound ;  
 A deadened clang, — a huge dim form,  
 Seen but, and heard, when gathering storm  
 And night were closing round.  
 But this, as tale of idle fame,  
 The nuns of Lindisfarn disclaim.

## XVII

While round the fire such legends go, 310  
 Far different was the scene of woe  
 Where, in a secret aisle beneath,  
 Council was held of life and death.  
 It was more dark and lone, that vault,  
 Than the worst dungeon cell ;  
 Old Colwulf built it, for his fault  
 In penitence to dwell,  
 When he for cowl and beads laid down  
 The Saxon battle-axe and crown.



This den, which, chilling every sense 320  
 Of feeling, hearing, sight,  
 Was called the Vault of Penitence,  
 Excluding air and light,  
 Was by the prelate Sexhelm made  
 A place of burial for such dead  
 As, having died in mortal sin,  
 Might not be laid the church within.  
 'T was now a place of punishment;  
 Whence if so loud a shriek were sent  
 As reached the upper air, 330  
 The hearers blessed themselves, and said  
 The spirits of the sinful dead  
 Bemoaned their torments there.

## XVIII

But though, in the monastic pile,  
 Did of this penitential aisle  
 Some vague tradition go,  
 Few only, save the Abbot, knew  
 Where the place lay, and still more few  
 Where those who had from him the clew  
 To that dread vault to go. 340  
 Victim and executioner  
 Were blindfold when transported there.  
 In low dark rounds the arches hung,  
 From the rude rock the side-walls sprung;  
 The gravestones, rudely sculptured o'er,  
 Half sunk in earth, by time half wore,  
 Were all the pavement of the floor;  
 The mildew-drops fell one by one,  
 With tinkling splash, upon the stone.

A cresset, in an iron chain,  
Which served to light this drear domain,  
With damp and darkness seemed to strive,  
As if it scarce might keep alive;  
And yet it dimly served to show  
The awful conclave met below.

35<sup>a</sup>

## XIX

There, met to doom in secrecy,  
Were placed the heads° of convents three,  
All servants of Saint Benedict,  
The statutes of whose order strict

On iron table lay;

36<sup>a</sup>

In long black dress, on seats of stone,  
Behind were these three judges shown

By the pale cresset's ray.

The Abbess of Saint Hilda's there  
Sat for a space with visage bare,  
Until, to hide her bosom's swell,  
And tear-drops that for pity fell,

She closely drew her veil;

Yon shrouded figure, as I guess,  
By her proud mien and flowing dress,  
Is Tynemouth's haughty Prioress,

37<sup>a</sup>

And she with awe looks pale;

And he, that ancient man, whose sight  
Has long been quenched by age's night,  
Upon whose wrinkled brow alone  
Nor ruth nor mercy's trace is shown,

Whose look is hard and stern, —  
Saint Cuthbert's Abbot is his style,  
For sanctity called through the isle

The Saint of Lindisfarn.

38<sup>a</sup>

## XX

Before them stood a guilty pair ;  
 But, though an equal fate they share,  
 Yet one alone deserves our care.  
 Her sex a page's dress belied ;  
 The cloak and doublet, loosely tied,  
 Obscured her charms, but could not hide.

Her cap down o'er her face she drew ;  
 And, on her doublet breast,  
 She tried to hide the badge of blue,  
 Lord Marmion's falcon crest.

39c

But, at the prioress's command,  
 A monk undid the silken band  
 That tied her tresses fair,  
 And raised the bonnet from her head,  
 And down her slender form they spread  
 In ringlets rich and rare.

Constance de Beverley they know,  
 Sister professed of Fontevraud,  
 Whom the Church numbered with the dead,  
 For broken vows and convent fled.

400

## XXI

When thus her face was given to view, --  
 Although so pallid was her hue,  
 It did a ghastly contrast bear  
 To those bright ringlets glistening fair, --  
 Her look composed, and steady eye,  
 Bespoke a matchless constancy ;  
 And there she stood so calm and pale  
 That, but her breathing did not fail,  
 And motion slight of eye and head,

And of her bosom, warranted  
 That neither sense nor pulse she lacks,  
 You might have thought a form of wax,  
 Wrought to the very life, was there;  
 So still she was, so pale, so fair.

410

## XXII

Her comrade was a sordid soul,  
 Such as does murder for a meed;  
 Who, but of fear, knows no control,  
 Because his conscience, seared and foul,  
 Feels not the import of his deed;  
 One whose brute-feeling ne'er aspires  
 Beyond his own more brute desires.  
 Such tools the Tempter ever needs  
 To do the savagest of deeds;  
 For them no visioned terrors daunt,  
 Their nights no fancied spectres haunt;  
 One fear with them, of all most base,  
 The fear of death, alone finds place.  
 This wretch was clad in frock and cowl,  
 And shamed not loud to moan and howl,  
 His body on the floor to dash,  
 And crouch, like hound beneath the lash;  
 While his mute partner, standing near,  
 Waited her doom without a tear.

420

430

## XXIII

Yet well the luckless wretch might shriek,  
 Well might her paleness terror speak!  
 For there were seen in that dark wall  
 Two niches, narrow, deep, and tall; —

Who enters at such grisly door  
 Shall ne'er, I ween, find exit more.  
 In each a slender meal was laid,  
 Of roots, of water, and of bread; 440  
 By each, in Benedictine dress,  
 Two haggard monks stood motionless,  
 Who, holding high a blazing torch,  
 Showed the grim entrance of the porch;  
 Reflecting back the smoky beam,  
 The dark-red walls and arches gleam.  
 Hewn stones and cement were displayed,  
 And building tools in order laid.

## XXIV

These executioners were chose 450  
 As men who were with mankind foes,  
 And, with despite and envy fired,  
 Into the cloister had retired,  
     Or who, in desperate doubt of grace,  
     Strove by deep penance to efface  
     Of some foul crime the stain;  
 For, as the vassals of her will,  
 Such men the Church selected still  
 As either joyed in doing ill,  
     Or thought more grace to gain 460  
 If in her cause they wrestled down  
 Feelings their nature strove to own.  
 By strange device were they brought there,  
 They knew not how, and knew not where.

## XXV

And now that blind old abbot rose,  
 To speak the Chapter's doom



On those the wall was to enclose  
    Alive within the tomb,  
But stopped because that woful maid,  
Gathering her powers, to speak essayed; 470  
Twice she essayed, and twice in vain,  
Her accents might no utterance gain;  
Nought but imperfect murmurs slip  
From her convulsed and quivering lip:  
    'Twixt each attempt all was so still,  
    You seemed to hear a distant rill —  
    'T was ocean's swells and falls;  
For, though this vault of sin and fear  
Was to the sounding surge so near,  
A tempest there you scarce could hear, 480  
    So massive were the walls.

## XXVI

At length, an effort sent apart  
The blood that curdled to her heart,  
    And light came to her eye,  
And color dawned upon her cheek,  
A hectic and a fluttered streak,  
Like that left on the Cheviot peak  
    By Autumn's stormy sky;  
And, when her silence broke at length,  
Still as she spoke she gathered strength, 490  
    And armed herself to bear.  
It was a fearful sight to see  
Such high resolve and constancy  
    In form so soft and fair.

## XXVII

“I speak not to implore your grace,  
Well know I for one minute’s space

    Successless might I sue :

Nor do I speak your prayers to gain ;  
For, if a death of lingering pain  
To cleanse my sins be penance vain,

500

    Vain are your masses too. —

I listened to a traitor’s tale,  
I left the convent and the veil ;  
For three long years I bowed my pride,  
A horse-boy in his train to ride ;  
And well my folly’s meed he gave,  
Who forfeited, to be his slave,  
All here, and all beyond the grave.

He saw young Clara’s face more fair,  
He knew her of broad lands the heir,  
Forgot his vows, his faith forswore,  
And Constance was beloved no more.

510

’T is an old tale, and often told ;

    But did my fate and wish agree,  
Ne’er had been read, in story old,  
Of maiden true betrayed for gold,

    That loved, or was avenged, like me !

## XXVIII

“The king approved his favorite’s aim ;  
In vain a rival barred his claim,

    Whose fate with Clare’s was plight,  
For he attaints that rival’s fame

520

With treason’s charge — and on they came  
    In mortal lists to fight.

Their oaths are said,  
 Their prayers are prayed,  
 Their lances in the rest are laid,  
 They meet in mortal shock ;  
 And hark ! the throng, with thundering cry,  
 Shout ' Marmion, Marmion ! to the sky,  
 De Wilton to the block !' 53c  
 Say, ye who preach Heaven shall decide  
 When in the lists two champions ride,  
 Say, was Heaven's justice here ?  
 When, loyal in his love and faith,  
 Wilton found overthrow or death  
 Beneath a traitor's spear ?  
 How false the charge, how true he fell,  
 This guilty<sup>o</sup> packet best can tell."  
 Then drew a packet from her breast,  
 Paused, gathered voice, and spoke the rest. 54c

## XXIX

"Still was false Marmion's bridal stayed ;  
 To Whitby's convent fled the maid,  
 The hated match to shun.  
 ' Ho ! shifts she thus ? ' King Henry cried,  
 ' Sir Marmion, she shall be thy bride,  
 If she were sworn a nun.'  
 One way remained — the king's command  
 Sent Marmion to the Scottish land ;  
 I lingered here, and rescue planned  
 For Clara and for me : 55c  
 This caitiff monk for gold did swear  
 He would to Whitby's shrine repair,  
 And by his drugs my rival fair  
 A saint in heaven should be ;

But ill the dastard kept his oath,  
Whose cowardice hath undone us both.

## XXX

“ And now my tongue the secret tells,  
Not that remorse my bosom swells,  
But to assure my soul that none  
Shall ever wed with Marmion. 560  
Had fortune my last hope betrayed,  
This packet to the king conveyed,  
Had given him to the headsman’s stroke,  
Although my heart that instant broke.—  
Now, men of death, work forth your will,  
For I can suffer, and be still ;  
And come he slow, or come he fast,  
It is but Death who comes at last.

## XXXI

“ Yet dread me from my living tomb,  
Ye vassal slaves of bloody Rome ! 570  
If Marmion’s late remorse<sup>o</sup> should wake,  
Full soon such vengeance will he take  
That you shall wish the fiery Dane  
Had rather been your guest<sup>o</sup> again.  
Behind, a darker<sup>o</sup> hour ascends !  
The altars quake, the crosier bends,  
The ire of a despotic king  
Rides forth upon destruction’s wing ;  
Then shall these vaults, so strong and deep,  
Burst open to the sea-winds’ sweep ; 580  
Some traveller then shall find my bones  
Whitening amid disjointed stones,

And, ignorant of priests' cruelty,  
Marvel such relics here should be."

## XXXII .

Fixed was her look and stern her air :  
Back from her shoulders streamed her hair ;  
The locks that wont her brow to shade  
Stared up erectly from her head ;  
Her figure seemed to rise more high ;  
Her voice despair's wild energy  
Had given a tone of prophecy. 590

Appalled the astonished conclave sate ;  
With stupid eyes, the men of fate  
Gazed on the light inspired form,  
And listened for the avenging storm ;  
The judges felt the victim's dread ;  
No hand was moved, no word was said,

Till thus the abbot's doom was given,  
Raising his sightless balls to heaven :  
" Sister, let thy sorrows cease ; 600  
Sinful brother, part in peace ! "

From that dire dungeon, place of doom,  
Of execution too, and tomb,

Paced forth the judges three ;  
Sorrow it were and shame to tell  
The butcher-work<sup>o</sup> that there befell  
When they had glided from the cell  
Of sin and misery.

## XXXIII

An hundred winding steps convey  
That conclave to the upper day ; 610



But ere they breathed the fresher air  
They heard the shriekings of despair,  
    And many a stifled groan.  
With speed their upward way they take, —  
Such speed as age and fear can make, —  
And crossed themselves for terror's sake.  
    As hurrying, tottering on,  
Even in the vesper's heavenly tone  
They seemed to hear a dying groan,  
And bade the passing knell to toll  
    For welfare of a parting soul. 620  
Slow o'er the midnight wave it swung,  
Northumbrian rocks in answer rung;  
To Warkworth cell the echoes rolled,  
His beads the wakeful hermit told;  
The Bamborough peasant raised his head,  
But slept ere half a prayer he said;  
So far was heard the mighty knell,  
The stag sprung up on Cheviot Fell,  
Spread his broad nostril to the wind, 630  
Listed before, aside, behind,  
Then couched him down beside the hind,  
And quaked among the mountain fern,  
To hear that sound so dull and stern.

## INTRODUCTION TO CANTO THIRD

TO WILLIAM ERSKINE,<sup>o</sup> ESQ.

*Ashestiel, Ettrick Forest.*

LIKE April morning clouds, that pass  
With varying shadow o'er the grass,  
And imitate on field and furrow  
Life's checkered scene of joy and sorrow;  
Like streamlet of the mountain north,  
Now in a torrent racing forth,  
Now winding slow its silver train,  
And almost slumbering on the plain;  
Like breezes of the autumn day,  
Whose voice inconstant dies away, 15  
And ever swells again as fast  
When the ear deems its murmur past;  
Thus various, my romantic theme  
Flits, winds, or sinks, a morning dream.  
Yet pleased, our eye pursues the trace  
Of Light and Shade's inconstant race;  
Pleased, views the rivulet afar,  
Weaving its maze irregular;  
And pleased, we listen as the breeze  
Heaves its wild sigh through Autumn trees: 20  
Then, wild as cloud, or stream, or gale,  
Flow on, flow unconfined, my tale!

Need I to thee, dear Erskine, tell  
 I love the license all too well,  
 In sounds now lowly, and now strong,  
 To raise the desultory song?  
 Oft, when mid such capricious chime  
 Some transient fit of loftier rhyme  
 To thy kind judgment seemed excuse  
 For many an error of the muse,  
 Oft hast thou said, "If still misspent,"  
 Thine hours to poetry are lent,  
 Go, and to tame thy wandering course,  
 Quaff from the fountain at the source;  
 Approach those masters o'er whose tomb  
 Immortal laurels ever bloom:  
 Instructive of the feebler bard,  
 Still from the grave their voice is heard;  
 From them, and from the paths they showed,  
 Choose honored guide and practised road;  
 Nor ramble on through brake and maze,  
 With harpers rude of barbarous days.

30

40

"Or deem'st thou not our later time  
 Yields topic meet for classic rhyme?  
 Hast thou no elegiac verse  
 For BRUNSWICK'S<sup>o</sup> venerable hearse?  
 What! not a line, a tear, a sigh,  
 When valor bleeds for liberty? —  
 Oh, hero of that glorious time,  
 When, with unrivalled light sublime, —  
 Though martial Austria, and though all  
 The might of Russia, and the Gaul,  
 Though banded Europe stood her foes —  
 The star of Brandenburg arose!  
 Thou couldst not live to see her beam

50

Forever quenched in Jena's stream.  
Lamented chief! — it was not given  
To thee to change the doom of Heaven,  
And crush that dragon in its birth,  
Predestined scourge of guilty earth. 60  
Lamented chief! — not thine the power  
To save in that presumptuous hour  
When Prussia hurried to the field,  
And snatched the spear but left the shield!  
Valor and skill 't was thine to try,  
And, tried in vain, 't was thine to die.  
Ill had it seemed thy silver hair  
The last, the bitterest pang to share,  
For princedoms reft, and scutcheons riven,  
And birthrights to usurpers given; 70  
Thy land's, thy children's wrongs to feel,  
And witness woes thou couldst not heal!  
On thee relenting Heaven bestows  
For honored life an honored close;  
And when revolves, in time's sure change,  
The hour of Germany's revenge,  
When, breathing fury for her sake,  
Some new Arminius<sup>o</sup> shall awake,  
Her champion, ere he strike, shall come  
To whet his sword on BRUNSWICK'S tomb. 80

“Or of the Red-Cross<sup>o</sup> hero teach,  
Dauntless in dungeon as on breach.  
Alike to him the sea, the shore,  
The brand, the bridle, or the oar:  
Alike to him the war that calls  
Its votaries to the shattered walls  
Which the grim Turk, besmeared with blood,  
Against the Invincible made good;

Or that whose thundering voice could wake  
 The silence of the polar lake, 90  
 When stubborn Russ and mettled Swede  
 On the warped wave their death-game played;  
 Or that where Vengeance and Affright  
 Howled round the father of the fight,  
 Who snatched on Alexandria's sand  
 The conqueror's wreath with dying hand.

“Or, if to touch such chord be thine,  
 Restore the ancient tragic line,  
 And emulate the notes that rung  
 From the wild harp which silent hung 100  
 By silver Avon's holy shore  
 Till twice an hundred years rolled o'er;  
 When she,<sup>o</sup> the bold Enchantress, came,  
 With fearless hand and heart on flame,  
 From the pale willow snatched the treasure,  
 And swept it with a kindred measure,  
 Till Avon's swans, while rung the grove  
 With Montfort's hate and Basil's love,  
 Awakening at the inspired strain,  
 Deemed their own Shakespeare lived again.” 110

Thy friendship thus thy judgment wronging  
 With praises not to me belonging,  
 In task more meet for mightiest powers  
 Wouldst thou engage my thriftless hours.  
 But say, my Erskine, hast thou weighed  
 That secret power by all obeyed,  
 Which warps not less the passive mind,  
 Its source concealed or undefined;  
 Whether an impulse, that has birth  
 Soon as the infant wakes on earth, 120



One with our feelings and our powers,  
And rather part of us than ours ;  
Or whether fitlier termed the sway  
Of habit, formed in early day ?  
Howe'er derived, its force confessed  
Rules with despotic sway the breast,  
And drags us on by viewless chain,  
While taste and reason plead in vain.  
Look east, and ask the Belgian why,  
Beneath Batavia's<sup>o</sup> sultry sky, 130  
He seeks not eager to inhale  
The freshness of the mountain gale,  
Content to rear his whitened wall  
Beside the dank and dull canal ?  
He 'll say, from youth he loved to see  
The white sail gliding by the tree.  
Or see yon weather-beaten hind,  
Whose sluggish herds before him wind,  
Whose tattered plaid and rugged cheek  
His northern clime and kindred speak ; 140  
Through England's laughing meads he goes,  
And England's wealth around him flows :  
Ask if it would content him well,  
At ease in those gay plains to dwell,  
Where hedge-rows spread a verdant screen,  
And spires and forests intervene,  
And the neat cottage peeps between ?  
No ! not for these will he exchange  
His dark Lochaber's boundless range,  
Not for fair Devon's meads forsake 150  
Ben Nevis gray and Garry's lake.

Thus while I ape the measure wild  
Of tales that charmed me yet a child,

Rude though they be, still with the chime  
Return the thoughts of early time;  
And feelings, roused in life's first day,  
Glow in the line and prompt the lay.  
Then rise those crags, that mountain tower,  
Which charmed my fancy's wakening hour.  
Though no broad river swept along, 160  
To claim, perchance, heroic song,  
Though sighed no groves in summer gale,  
To prompt of love a softer tale,  
Though scarce a puny streamlet's speed  
Claimed homage from a shepherd's reed,  
Yet was poetic impulse given  
By the green hill and clear blue heaven.  
It was a barren scene and wild  
Where naked cliffs were rudely piled,  
But ever and anon between 170  
Lay velvet tufts of loveliest green;  
And well the lonely infant knew  
Recesses where the wall-flower grew,  
And honeysuckle loved to crawl  
Up the low crag and ruined wall.  
I deemed such nooks the sweetest shade  
The sun in all its round surveyed;  
And still I thought that shattered tower  
The mightiest work of human power,  
And marvelled as the aged hind 180  
With some strange tale bewitched my mind  
Of forayers, who with headlong force  
Down from that strength had spurred their horse,  
Their southern rapine to renew  
Far in the distant Cheviots blue,  
And, home returning, filled the hall  
With revel, wassail-rout, and brawl.

Methought that still with trump and clang  
The gateway's broken arches rang;  
Methought grim features, seamed with scars, 190  
Glared through the window's rusty bars,  
And ever, by the winter hearth,  
Old tales I heard of woe or mirth,  
Of lovers' sleights, of ladies' charms,  
Of witches' spells, of warriors' arms;  
Of patriot battles, won of old  
By Wallace wight and Bruce the bold;  
Of later fields of feud and fight,  
When, pouring from their Highland height,  
The Scottish clans in headlong sway 200  
Had swept the scarlet ranks away.  
While stretched at length upon the floor,  
Again I fought each combat o'er,  
Pebbles and shells, in order laid,  
The mimic ranks of war displayed;  
And onward still the Scottish Lion bore,  
And still the scattered Southron fled before.

Still, with vain fondness, could I trace  
Anew each kind familiar face  
That brightened at our evening fire! 210  
From the thatched mansion's° gray-haired sire,  
Wise without learning, plain and good,  
And sprung of Scotland's gentler blood;  
Whose eye in age, quick, clear, and keen,  
Showed what in youth its glance had been;  
Whose doom discording neighbors sought,  
Content with equity unbought;  
To him the venerable priest,  
Our frequent and familiar guest,  
Whose life and manners well could paint 220

Alike the student and the saint,  
Alas! whose speech too oft I broke  
With gambol rude and timeless joke:  
For I was wayward, bold, and wild,  
A self-willed imp, a grandame's child,  
But half a plague, and half a jest,  
Was still endured, beloved, caressed.

From me, thus nurtured, dost thou ask  
The classic poet's well-conned task?  
Nay, Erskine, nay — on the wild hill  
Let the wild heath-bell flourish still; 330  
Cherish the tulip, prune the vine,  
But freely let the woodbine twine,  
And leave untrimmed the eglantine:  
Nay, my friend, nay — since oft thy praise  
Hath given fresh vigor to my lays,  
Since oft thy judgment could refine  
My flattened thought or cumbrous line,  
Still kind, as is thy wont, attend,  
And in the minstrel spare the friend. 240  
Though wild as cloud, as stream, as gale,  
Flow forth, flow unrestrained, my tale!

## CANTO THIRD

### THE HOSTEL, OR INN

#### I

THE livelong day° Lord Marmion rode;  
The mountain path the Palmer showed  
By glen and streamlet winded still,  
Where stunted birches hid the rill.  
They might not choose the lowland road,  
For the Merse° forayers were abroad,  
Who, fired with hate and thirst of prey,  
Had scarcely failed to bar their way.

Oft on the trampling band from crown  
Of some tall cliff the deer looked down;  
On wing of jet from his repose  
In the deep heath the blackcock rose;  
Sprung from the gorse the timid roe,  
Nor waited for the bending bow;  
And when the stony path began  
By which the naked peak they wan,  
Up flew the snowy ptarmigan.  
The noon had long been passed before  
They gained the height of Lammermoor;  
Thence winding down the northern way

10

20



Before them at the close of day  
 Old Gifford's towers and hamlet lay.

## II

No summons calls them to the tower,  
 To spend the hospitable hour.  
 To Scotland's camp the lord was gone;  
 His cautious dame, in bower alone,  
 Dreaded her castle to unclose,  
 So late, to unknown friends or foes.  
     On through the hamlet as they paced,  
     Before a porch whose front was graced 30  
     With bush<sup>o</sup> and flagon trimly placed,  
     Lord Marmion drew his rein:  
 The village inn seemed large, though rude;  
 Its cheerful fire and hearty food  
     Might well relieve his train.  
 Down from their seats the horsemen sprung,  
 With jingling spurs the court-yard rung;  
 They bind their horses to the stall,  
 For forage, food, and firing call,  
 And various clamor fills the hall: 40  
 Weighing the labor with the cost,  
 Toils everywhere the bustling host.

## III

Soon, by the chimney's merry blaze,  
 Through the rude hostel might you gaze,  
 Might see where in dark nook aloof  
 The rafters of the sooty roof  
     Bore wealth of winter cheer;  
 Of sea-fowl dried, and solands store,

And gammons of the tusky boar,  
And savory haunch of deer. 50  
The chimney arch projected wide;  
Above, around it, and beside,  
Were tools for housewives' hand;  
Nor wanted, in that martial day,  
The implements of Scottish fray,  
The buckler, lance, and brand.  
Beneath its shade, the place of state,  
On oaken settle Marmion sate,  
And viewed around the blazing hearth  
His followers mix in noisy mirth; 60  
Whom with brown ale, in jolly tide,  
From ancient vessels ranged aside,  
Full actively their host supplied.

## IV

Theirs was the glee of martial breast,  
And laughter theirs at little jest;  
And oft Lord Marmion deigned to aid,  
And mingle in the mirth they made;  
For though, with men of high degree,  
The proudest of the proud was he,  
Yet, trained in camps, he knew the art 70  
To win the soldier's hardy heart.  
They love a captain to obey,  
Boisterous as March, yet fresh as May;  
With open hand and brow as free,  
Lover of wine and minstrelsy;  
Ever the first to scale a tower,  
As venturous in a lady's bower:—  
Such buxom chief shall lead his host  
From India's fires to Zembla's frost.

## V

Resting upon his pilgrim staff, 80  
 Right opposite the Palmer stood,  
 His thin dark visage seen but half,  
 Half hidden by his hood.  
 Still fixed on Marmion was his look,  
 Which he, who ill such gaze could brook,  
 Strove by a frown to quell ;  
 But not for that, though more than once  
 Full met their stern encountering glance,  
 The Palmer's visage fell.

## VI

By fits less frequent from the crowd 90  
 Was heard the burst of laughter loud ;  
 For still, as squire and archer stared  
 On that dark face and matted beard,  
 Their glee and game declined.  
 All gazed at length in silence drear,  
 Unbroke save when in comrade's ear  
 Some yeoman, wondering in his fear,  
 Thus whispered forth his mind :  
 " Saint Mary ! saw'st thou e'er such sight ?  
 How pale his cheek, his eye how bright, 100  
 Whene'er the firebrand's fickle light  
 Glances beneath his cowl !  
 Full on our lord he sets his eye ;  
 For his best palfrey would not I  
 Endure that sullen° scowl."

## VII

But Marmion, as to chase the awe  
 Which thus had quelled their hearts who saw

The ever-varying firelight show  
That figure stern and face of woe,

Now called upon a squire :

“Fitz-Eustace, know'st thou not some lay,  
To speed the lingering night away ?

We slumber by the fire.”

110

## VIII

“So please you,” thus the youth rejoined,

“Our choicest minstrel's left behind.

Ill may we hope to please your ear,  
Accustomed Constant's° strains to hear.

The harp full deftly can he strike,  
And wake the lover's lute alike ;

To dear Saint Valentine no thrush  
Sings livelier from a springtide bush,

No nightingale her lovelorn tune  
More sweetly warbles to the moon.

Woe to the cause, whate'er it be,  
Detains from us his melody,

Lavished on rocks and billows stern,  
Or duller monks of Lindisfarn.

Now must I venture as I may,  
To sing his favorite roundelay.”

120

## IX

A mellow voice Fitz-Eustace had,  
The air he chose was wild and sad ;

Such have I heard° in Scottish land  
Rise from the busy harvest band,

When falls before the mountaineer  
On Lowland plains the ripened ear.

Now one shrill voice the notes prolong,

130

Now a wild chorus swells the song:  
 Oft have I listened and stood still  
 As it came softened up the hill,  
 And deemed it the lament of men  
 Who languished for their native glen,  
 And thought how sad would be such sound  
 On Susquehanna's swampy ground,  
 Kentucky's wood-encumbered brake,  
 Or wild Ontario's boundless lake,  
 Where heart-sick exiles in the strain  
 Recalled fair Scotland's hills again!

140

## X

## SONG

Where shall the lover rest,  
 Whom the fates sever  
 From his true maiden's breast,  
 Parted forever?  
 Where, through groves deep and high,  
 Sounds the far billow,  
 Where early violets die,  
 Under the willow.

150

## CHORUS

*Eleu loro, etc.* Soft shall be his pillow.

There, through the summer day,  
 Cool streams are laving;  
 There, while the tempests sway,  
 Scarce are boughs waving;  
 There thy rest shalt thou take,  
 Parted forever,

160



Never again to wake,  
Never, O never!

## CHORUS

*Eleu loro, etc.* Never, O never!

## XI

Where shall the traitor rest,  
He the deceiver,  
Who could win maiden's breast,  
Ruin and leave her?  
In the lost<sup>o</sup> battle,  
Borne down by the flying,  
Where mingles war's rattle  
With groans of the dying.

17c

## CHORUS

*Eleu loro, etc.* There shall he be lying.

Her wing shall the eagle flap  
O'er the false-hearted;  
His warm blood the wolf shall lap,  
Ere life be parted.  
Shame and dishonor sit  
By his grave<sup>o</sup> ever;  
Blessing shall hallow it,—  
Never, O never!

18c

## CHORUS

*Eleu loro, etc.* Never, O never!

## XII

It ceased, the melancholy sound,  
 And silence sunk on all around.  
 The air was sad; but sadder still  
     It fell on Marmion's ear,  
 And plained as if disgrace and ill,  
     And shameful death, were near.  
 He drew his mantle past his face,  
     Between it and the band,  
 And rested with his head a space  
     Reclining on his hand.  
 His thoughts I scan not; but I ween  
 That, could their import have been seen,  
 The meanest groom in all the hall,  
 That e'er tied courser to a stall,  
 Would scarce have wished to be their prey,  
 For Lutterward and Fontenaye.

190

## XIII

High minds, of native pride and force,  
 Most deeply feel thy pangs, Remorse!  
 Fear for their scourge mean villains have,  
 Thou art the torturer of the brave!  
 Yet fatal strength they boast to steel  
 Their minds to bear the wounds they feel,  
 Even while they writhe beneath the smart  
 Of civil conflict in the heart.  
 For soon Lord Marmion raised his head,  
 And smiling to Fitz-Eustace said:  
 "Is it not strange that, as ye sung,  
 Seemed in mine ear a death-peal<sup>o</sup> rung,  
 Such as in nunneries they toll

200

210

For some departing sister's soul?  
 Say, what may this portend?"  
 Then first the Palmer silence broke, —  
 The livelong day he had not spoke, —  
 "The death of a dear friend."

## XIV

Marmion, whose steady heart and eye  
 Ne'er changed in worst extremity,  
 Marmion, whose soul could scantily brook 22c  
 Even from his king a haughty look,  
 Whose accent of command controlled  
 In camps the boldest of the bold —  
 Thought, look, and utterance failed him now,  
 Fallen was his glance and flushed his brow;  
 For either in his tone,  
 Or something in the Palmer's look,  
 So full upon his conscience strook  
 That answer he found none.  
 Thus oft it haps that when within 23c  
 They shrink at sense of secret sin,  
 A feather daunts the brave;  
 A fool's wild speech confounds the wise,  
 And proudest princes veil their eyes  
 Before their meanest slave.

## XV

Well might he falter! — By his aid  
 Was Constance Beverley betrayed.  
 Not that he augured of the doom  
 Which on the living closed the tomb:  
 But, tired to hear the desperate maid 24c  
 Threaten by turns, beseech, upbraid,

And wroth because in wild despair  
 She practised on the life of Clare,  
 Its fugitive the Church he gave,  
 Though not a victim, but a slave,  
 And deemed restraint in convent strange  
 Would hide her wrongs and her revenge.  
 Himself, proud Henry's favorite peer,  
 Held Romish thunders idle fear;  
 Secure his pardon he might hold 250  
 For some slight mulct of penance-gold.  
 Thus judging, he gave secret way  
 When the stern priests surprised their prey.  
 His train but deemed the favorite page  
 Was left behind to spare<sup>o</sup> his age;  
 Or other if they deemed, none dared  
 To mutter what he thought and heard:  
 Woe to the vassal who durst pry  
 Into Lord Marmion's privacy!

## XVI

His conscience slept — he deemed her well, 260  
 And safe secured in distant cell;  
 But, wakened by her favorite lay,  
 And that strange Palmer's boding say  
 That fell so ominous and drear  
 Full on the object of his fear,  
 To aid remorse's venom'd throes,  
 Dark tales of convent-vengeance rose;  
 And Constance, late betrayed and scorned,  
 All lovely on his soul returned;  
 Lovely as when at treacherous call 270  
 She left her convent's peaceful wall,  
 Crimsoned with shame, with terror mute,

Dreading alike escape, pursuit,  
Till love, victorious o'er alarms,  
Hid fears and blushes in his arms.

## XVII

“Alas!” he thought, “how changed that mien!  
How changed these timid looks have been,  
Since years of guilt and of disguise  
Have steeled her brow and armed her eyes!  
No more of virgin terror speaks 280  
The blood that mantles in her cheeks;  
Fierce and unfeminine are there,  
Frenzy for joy, for grief despair;  
And I the cause — for whom were given  
Her peace on earth, her hopes in heaven! —  
Would,” thought he, as the picture grows,  
“I on its stalk had left the rose!  
Oh, why should man’s success remove  
The very charms that wake his love? —  
Her convent’s peaceful solitude 290  
Is now a prison harsh and rude;  
And, pent within the narrow cell,  
How will her spirit chafe and swell!  
How brook the stern monastic laws!  
The penance how — and I the cause! —  
Vigil and scourge — perchance even worse!”  
And twice he rose to cry, “To horse!”  
And twice his sovereign’s<sup>o</sup> mandate came,  
Like damp upon a kindling flame;  
And twice he thought, “Gave I not charge 300  
She should be safe, though not at large?  
They durst not, for their island, shred  
One golden ringlet from her head.”



## XVIII

While thus in Marmion's bosom strove  
 Repentance and reviving love,  
 Like whirlwinds whose contending sway  
 I've seen Loch Vennachar obey,  
 Their host the Palmer's speech had heard,  
 And talkative took up the word :

“ Ay, reverend pilgrim, you who stray 310  
 From Scotland's simple land away,  
 To visit realms afar,

Full often learn the art to know  
 Of future weal or future woe,

By word, or sign, or star ;  
 Yet might a knight his fortune hear,  
 If, knight-like, he despises fear,  
 Not far from hence ; — if fathers old  
 Aright our hamlet legend told.”

These broken words the menials move, — 320  
 For marvels still the vulgar love, —  
 And, Marmion giving license cold,  
 His tale the host thus gladly told : —

## XIX

## THE HOST'S TALE

“ A clerk could tell what years have flown  
 Since Alexander filled our throne, —  
 Third monarch of that warlike name, —  
 And eke the time when here he came  
 To seek Sir Hugo, then our lord :  
 A braver never drew a sword ;  
 A wiser never, at the hour 330  
 Of midnight, spoke the word of power ;

The same whom ancient records call  
The founder of the Goblin-Hall.<sup>o</sup>  
I would, Sir Knight, your longer stay  
Gave you that cavern to survey.  
Of lofty roof and ample size,  
Beneath the castle deep it lies :  
To hew the living rock profound,  
The floor to pave, the arch to round,  
There never toiled a mortal arm,  
It all was wrought by word and charm ;  
And I have heard my grandsire say  
That the wild clamor and affray  
Of those dread artisans of hell,  
Who labored under Hugo's spell,  
Sounded as loud as ocean's war  
Among the caverns of Dunbar.

340

## XX

“The king Lord Gifford's castle sought,  
Deep laboring with uncertain thought.  
Even then he mustered all his host,  
To meet upon the western coast ;  
For Norse and Danish galleys plied  
Their oars within the Firth of Clyde.  
There floated Haco's<sup>o</sup> banner trim  
Above Norwegian warriors grim,  
Savage of heart and large of limb,  
Threatening both continent and isle,  
Bute, Arran, Cunninghame, and Kyle.  
Lord Gifford, deep beneath the ground,  
Heard Alexander's bugle sound,  
And tarried not his garb to change,  
But, in his wizard habit strange,

350

360

Came forth, — a quaint and fearful sight:  
 His mantle lined with fox-skins white;  
 His high and wrinkled forehead bore  
 A pointed cap, such as of yore  
 Clerks say that Pharaoh's Magi wore;  
 His shoes were marked with cross and spell,  
 Upon his breast a pentacle;  
 His zone of virgin parchment thin,  
 Or, as some tell, of dead man's skin,  
 Bore many a planetary sign,  
 Combust, and retrograde, and trine;  
 And in his hand he held prepared  
 A naked sword without a guard.

370

## XXI

“Dire dealings with a fiendish race  
 Had marked strange lines upon his face;  
 Vigil and fast had worn him grim,  
 His eyesight dazzled seemed and dim,  
 As one unused to upper day;  
 Even his own menials with dismay  
 Beheld, Sir Knight, the grisly sire  
 In this unwonted wild attire;  
 Unwonted, for traditions run  
 He seldom thus beheld the sun.  
 ‘I know,’ he said, — his voice was hoarse.  
 And broken seemed its hollow force, —  
 ‘I know the cause, although untold,  
 Why the king seeks his vassal's hold:  
 Vainly from me my liege would know  
 His kingdom's future weal or woe;  
 But yet, if strong his arm and heart,  
 His courage may do more than art.

380

390

## XXII

“Of middle air the demons proud,  
Who ride upon the racking cloud,  
Can read in fixed or wandering star  
The issue of events afar,  
But still their sullen aid withhold,  
Save when by mightier force controlled.  
Such late I summoned to my hall; 400  
And though so potent was the call  
That scarce the deepest nook of hell  
I deemed a refuge from the spell,  
Yet, obstinate in silence still,  
The haughty demon mocks my skill.  
But thou, — who little know'st thy might  
As born upon that blessed night  
When yawning graves and dying groan  
Proclaimed hell's empire overthrown, —  
With untaught valor shalt compel 410  
Response denied to magic spell.’  
‘Gramercy,’ quoth our monarch free,  
‘Place him but front to front with me,  
And, by this good and honored brand,  
The gift of Cœur-de-Lion's hand,  
Soothly I swear that, tide what tide,  
The demon shall a buffet bide.’  
His bearing bold the wizard viewed,  
And thus, well pleased, his speech renewed:  
‘There spoke the blood of Malcolm! — mark: 420  
Forth pacing hence at midnight dark,  
The rampart seek whose circling crown  
Crests the ascent of yonder down:  
A southern entrance shalt thou find;  
There halt, and there thy bugle wind,

And trust thine elfin foe to see  
 In guise of thy worst enemy.  
 Couch then thy lance and spur thy steed —  
 Upon him! and Saint George to speed!  
 If he go down, thou soon shalt know 430  
 Whate'er these airy sprites can show;  
 If thy heart fail thee in the strife,  
 I am no warrant for thy life.'

## XXIII

"Soon as the midnight bell did ring,  
 Alone and armed, forth rode the king  
 To that old camp's deserted round.  
 Sir Knight, you well might mark the mound  
 Left hand the town, — the Pictish race  
 The trench, long since, in blood did trace;  
 The moor around is brown and bare, 440  
 The space within is green and fair.  
 The spot our village children know,  
 For there the earliest wild-flowers grow;  
 But woe betide the wandering wight  
 That treads its circle in the night!  
 The breadth across, a bowshot clear,  
 Gives ample space for full career;  
 Opposed to the four points of heaven,  
 By four deep gaps are entrance given.  
 The southernmost our monarch passed, 450  
 Halted, and blew a gallant blast;  
 And on the north, within the ring,  
 Appeared the form of England's king,  
 Who then, a thousand leagues afar,  
 In Palestine waged holy war:  
 Yet arms like England's did he wield;



Alike the leopards in the shield,  
 Alike his Syrian courser's frame,  
 The rider's length of limb the same.  
 Long afterwards did Scotland know  
 Fell Edward was her deadliest foe.

46c

## XXIV

"The vision made our monarch start,  
 But soon he manned his noble heart,  
 And in the first career they ran,  
 The Elfin Knight fell, horse and man;  
 Yet did a splinter of his lance  
 Through Alexander's visor glance,  
 And razed the skin — a puny wound.  
 The king, light leaping to the ground,  
 With naked blade his phantom foe  
 Compelled the future war to show.

47c

Of Largs he saw the glorious plain,  
 Where still gigantic bones remain,  
 Memorial of the Danish war;  
 Himself he saw, amid the field,  
 On high his brandished war-axe wield  
 And strike proud Haco from his car,  
 While all around the shadowy kings  
 Denmark's grim ravens coverd their wings.  
 'T is said that in that awful night  
 Remoter visions met his sight,  
 Foreshowing future conquest far,  
 When our sons' sons wage Northern° war;  
 A royal city, tower and spire,  
 Reddened the midnight sky with fire,  
 And shouting crews her navy bore  
 Triumphant to the victor shore.

48c

Such signs may learned clerks explain,  
They pass the wit of simple swain.

## XXV

“The joyful king turned home again,  
Headed his host, and quelled the Dane; 490  
But yearly, when returned the night  
Of his strange combat with the sprite,  
His wound must bleed and smart;  
Lord Gifford then would gibing say,  
‘Bold as ye were, my liege, ye pay  
The penance of your start.’  
Long since, beneath Dunfermline’s nave,  
King Alexander fills his grave,  
Our Lady give him rest!  
Yet still the knightly spear and shield 500  
The Elfin Warrior doth wield  
Upon the brown hill’s breast,  
And many a knight hath proved his chance  
In the charmed ring to break a lance,  
But all have foully sped;  
Save two, as legends tell, and they  
Were Wallace wight and Gilbert Hay. —  
Gentles, my tale is said.”

## XXVI

The quaighs° were deep, the liquor strong,  
And on the tale the yeoman-throng 510  
Had made a comment sage and long,  
But Marmion gave a sign:  
And with their lord the squires retire,  
The rest around the hostel fire  
Their drowsy limbs recline;

For pillow, underneath each head,  
The quiver and the targe were laid.  
Deep slumbering on the hostel floor,  
Oppressed with toil and ale, they snore;  
The dying flame, in fitful change,  
Threw on the group its shadows strange.

520

## XXVII

Apart, and nestling in the hay  
Of a waste loft, Fitz-Eustace lay;  
Scarce by the pale moonlight were seen  
The foldings of his mantle green:  
Lightly he dreamt, as youth will dream,  
Of sport by thicket, or by stream,  
Of hawk or hound, or ring or glove,  
Or, lighter yet, of lady's love.  
A cautious tread his slumber broke,  
And, close beside him when he woke,  
In moonbeam half, and half in gloom,  
Stood a tall form with nodding plume;  
But, ere his dagger Eustace drew,  
His master Marmion's voice he knew:

530

## XXVIII

"Fitz-Eustace! rise, — I cannot rest;  
Yon churl's wild legend haunts my breast,  
And graver thoughts have chafed my mood;  
The air must cool my feverish blood,  
And fain would I ride forth to see  
The scene of elfin chivalry.  
Arise, and saddle me my steed:  
And, gentle Eustace, take good heed  
Thou dost not rouse these drowsy slaves;

540

I would not that the prating knaves  
 Had cause for saying, o'er their ale,  
 That I could credit such a tale."  
 Then softly down the steps they slid,  
 Eustace the stable door undid,  
 And, darkling, Marmion's steed arrayed, 55c  
 While, whispering, thus the baron said: —

## XXIX

“Didst never, good my youth, hear tell  
 That on the hour when I was born  
 Saint George, who graced my sire's chapelle,  
 Down from his steed of marble fell,  
 A weary wight forlorn?  
 The flattering chaplains all agree  
 The champion left his steed to me.  
 I would, the omen's truth to show,  
 That I could meet this elfin foe! 55c  
 Blithe would I battle for the right  
 To ask one question at the sprite. —  
 Vain thought! for elves, if elves there be,  
 An empty race, by fount or sea  
 To dashing waters dance and sing,  
 Or round the green oak wheel their ring.”  
 Thus speaking, he his steed bestrode,  
 And from the hostel slowly rode.

## XXX

Fitz-Eustace followed him abroad,  
 And marked him pace the village road, 57c  
 And listened to his horse's tramp,  
 Till, by the lessening sound,

He judged that of the Pictish camp  
 Lord Marmion sought the round.  
 Wonder it seemed, in the squire's eyes,  
 That one, so wary held and wise, —  
 Of whom 't was said, he scarce received  
 For gospel what the Church believed, —  
 Should, stirred by idle tale,  
 Ride forth in silence of the night, 58c  
 As hoping half to meet a sprite,  
 Arrayed in plate and mail.  
 For little did Fitz-Eustace know  
 That passions in contending flow  
 Unfix the strongest mind;  
 Wearied from doubt to doubt to flee,  
 We welcome fond credulity,  
 Guide confident, though blind.

## XXXI

Little for this Fitz-Eustace cared,  
 But patient waited till he heard 59c  
 At distance, pricked to utmost speed,  
 The foot-tramp of a flying steed  
 Come townward rushing on;  
 First, dead, as if on turf it trode,  
 Then, clattering on the village road, —  
 In other pace than forth he yode,  
 Returned Lord Marmion.  
 Down hastily he sprung from selle,<sup>o</sup>  
 And in his haste wellnigh he fell;  
 To the squire's hand the rein he threw, 60c  
 And spoke no word as he withdrew:  
 But yet the moonlight did betray  
 The falcon-crest was soiled with clay;



And plainly might Fitz-Eustace see,  
By stains upon the charger's knee  
And his left side, that on the moor  
He had not kept his footing sure.  
Long musing on these wondrous signs,  
At length to rest the squire reclines,  
Broken and short; for still between  
Would dreams of terror intervene:  
Eustace did ne'er so blithely mark  
The first notes of the morning lark.

## INTRODUCTION TO CANTO FOURTH

TO JAMES SKENE,° ESQ.

*Ashestiel, Ettrick Forest*

AN ancient Minstrel sagely said,  
“Where is the life which late we led?”  
That motley clown in Arden wood,  
Whom humorous Jaques with envy viewed,  
Not even that clown could amplify  
On this trite text so long as I.  
Eleven years we now may tell  
Since we have known each other well,  
Since, riding side by side, our hand  
First drew the voluntary brand; 1c  
And sure, through many a varied scene,  
Unkindness never came between.  
Away these winged years have flown,  
To join the mass of ages gone;  
And though deep marked, like all below,  
With checkered shades of joy and woe,  
Though thou o’er realms and seas hast ranged,  
Marked cities lost and empires changed,  
While here at home my narrower ken  
Somewhat of manners saw and men; 2c  
Though varying wishes, hopes, and fears  
Fevered the progress of these years,

Yet now, days, weeks, and months but seem  
 The recollection of a dream,  
 So still we glide down to the sea  
 Of fathomless eternity.

Even now it scarcely seems a day  
 Since first I tuned this idle lay;  
 A task so often thrown aside,  
 When leisure graver<sup>o</sup> cares denied, 30  
 That now November's dreary gale,  
 Whose voice inspired my opening tale,  
 That same November gale once more  
 Whirls the dry leaves on Yarrow shore.  
 Their vexed boughs streaming to the sky,  
 Once more our naked birches sigh,  
 And Blackhouse heights and Ettrick Pen  
 Have donned their wintry shrouds again,  
 And mountain dark and flooded mead  
 Bid us forsake the banks of Tweed. 40  
 Earlier than wont along the sky,  
 Mixed with the rack, the snow mists fly;  
 The shepherd who, in summer sun,  
 Had something of our envy won,  
 As thou with pencil, I with pen,  
 The features traced of hill and glen, —  
 He who, outstretched the livelong day,  
 At ease among the heath-flowers lay,  
 Viewed the light clouds with vacant look,  
 Or slumbered o'er his tattered book, 50  
 Or idly busied him to guide  
 His angle o'er the lessened tide, —  
 At midnight now the snowy plain  
 Finds sterner labor for the swain.

When red hath set the beamless sun  
Through heavy vapors dank and dun,  
When the tired ploughman, dry and warm,  
Hears, half asleep, the rising storm  
Hurling the hail and sleeted rain  
Against the casement's tinkling pane; 6c  
The sounds that drive wild deer and fox  
To shelter in the brake and rocks  
Are warnings which the shepherd ask  
To dismal and to dangerous task.  
Oft he looks forth, and hopes, in vain,  
The blast may sink in mellowing rain;  
Till, dark above and white below,  
Decided drives the flaky snow,  
And forth the hardy swain must go.  
Long, with dejected look and whine, 7c  
To leave the hearth his dogs repine:  
Whistling and cheering them to aid,  
Around his back he wreathes the plaid:  
His flock he gathers and he guides  
To open downs and mountain-sides,  
Where, fiercest though the tempest blow,  
Least deeply lies the drift below.  
The blast that whistles o'er the fells  
Stiffens his locks to icicles;  
Oft he looks back while, streaming far, 8c  
His cottage window seems a star, —  
Loses its feeble gleam, — and then  
Turns patient to the blast again,  
And, facing to the tempest's sweep,  
Drives through the gloom his lagging sheep.  
If fails his heart, if his limbs fail,  
Benumbing death is in the gale;  
His paths, his landmarks, all unknown,

Close to the hut, no more his own,  
 Close to the aid he sought in vain,  
 The morn may find the stiffened swain :  
 The widow sees, at dawning pale,  
 His orphans raise their feeble wail ;  
 And, close beside him in the snow,  
 Poor Yarrow, partner of their woe,  
 Couches upon his master's breast,  
 And licks his cheek to break his rest.

9c

Who envies now the shepherd's lot,  
 His healthy fare, his rural cot,  
 His summer couch by greenwood tree,  
 His rustic kirk's loud revelry,  
 His native hill-notes tuned on high  
 To Marion of the blithesome eye,  
 His crook, his scrip, his oaten reed,  
 And all Arcadia's golden creed ?

10c

Changes not so with us, my Skene,  
 Of human life the varying scene ?  
 Our youthful summer oft we see  
 Dance by on wings of game and glee,  
 While the dark storm reserves its rage  
 Against the winter of our age ;  
 As he, the ancient chief of Troy,  
 His manhood spent in peace and joy,  
 But Grecian fires and loud alarms  
 Called ancient Priam forth to arms.  
 Then happy those, since each must drain  
 His share of pleasure, share of pain, —  
 Then happy those, beloved of Heaven,  
 To whom the mingled cup is given ;

11c



Whose lenient sorrows find relief, 120  
Whose joys are chastened by their grief.  
And such a lot, my Skene, was thine,  
When thou of late wert doomed to twine —  
Just when thy bridal hour was by —  
The cypress with the myrtle tie.  
Just on thy bride her sire had smiled,  
And blessed the union of his child,  
When love must change its joyous cheer,  
And wipe affection's filial tear.  
Nor did the actions next his end 130  
Speak more the father than the friend:  
Scarce had lamented Forbes' paid  
The tribute to his minstrel's shade,  
The tale of friendship scarce was told,  
Ere the narrator's heart was cold —  
Far may we search before we find  
A heart so manly and so kind!  
But not around his honored urn  
Shall friends alone and kindred mourn;  
The thousand eyes his care had dried 140  
Pour at his name a bitter tide,  
And frequent falls the grateful dew  
For benefits the world ne'er knew.  
If mortal charity dare claim  
The Almighty's attributed name,  
Inscribe above his mouldering clay,  
"The widow's shield, the orphan's stay."  
Nor, though it wake thy sorrow, deem  
My verse intrudes on this sad theme,  
For sacred was the pen that wrote, 150  
"Thy father's friend forget thou not;"  
And grateful title may I plead,  
For many a kindly word and deed,

To bring my tribute to his grave : —  
 'T is little — but 'tis all I have.

To thee, perchance, this rambling strain  
 Recalls our summer walks again ;  
 When, doing nought, — and, to speak true,  
 Not anxious to find aught to do, —  
 The wild unbounded hills we ranged, 160  
 While oft our talk its topic changed,  
 And, desultory as our way,  
 Ranged unconfined from grave to gay.  
 Even when it flagged, as oft will chance,  
 No effort made to break its trance,  
 We could right pleasantly pursue  
 Our sports in social silence too ;  
 Thou gravely laboring to portray  
 The blighted oak's fantastic spray,  
 I spelling o'er with much delight 170  
 The legend of that antique knight,  
 Tirante by name, ycleped the White.  
 At either's feet a trusty squire,  
 Pandour and Camp, with eyes of fire,  
 Jealous each other's motions viewed,  
 And scarce suppressed their ancient feud.  
 The laverock whistled from the cloud ;  
 The stream was lively, but not loud ;  
 From the white thorn the May-flower shed  
 Its dewy fragrance round our head : 180  
 Not Ariel lived more merrily  
 Under the blossomed bough than we.

And blithesome nights, too, have been ours,  
 When Winter stript the Summer's bowers.

Careless we heard, what now I hear,  
The wild blast sighing deep and drear,  
When fires were bright and lamps beamed gay,  
And ladies tuned the lovely lay,  
And he was held a laggard soul  
Who shunned to quaff the sparkling bowl. 190  
Then he whose absence<sup>o</sup> we deplore,  
Who breathes the gales of Devon's shore,  
The longer missed, bewailed the more,  
And thou, and I, and dear-loved Rae,  
And one whose name I may not say, —  
For not Mimosa's tender tree  
Shrinks sooner from the touch than he, —  
In merry chorus well combined,  
With laughter drowned the whistling wind.  
Mirth was within, and Care without 200  
Might gnaw her nails to hear our shout.  
Not but amid the buxom scene  
Some grave discourse might intervene —  
Of the good horse that bore him best,  
His shoulder, hoof, and arching crest ;  
For, like mad Tom's, our chiefest care  
Was horse to ride and weapon wear.  
Such nights we've had ; and, though the game  
Of manhood be more sober tame,  
And though the field-day or the drill 210  
Seem less important now, yet still  
Such may we hope to share again.  
The sprightly thought inspires my strain !  
And mark how, like a horseman true,  
Lord Marmion's march I thus renew.

## CANTO FOURTH

### THE CAMP

#### I

EUSTACE, I said, did blithely mark  
The first notes of the merry lark.  
The lark sang shrill, the cock he crew,  
And loudly Marmion's bugles blew,  
And with their light and lively call  
Brought groom and yeoman to the stall.

Whistling they came and free of heart,  
But soon their mood was changed;  
Complaint was heard on every part  
Of something disarranged.

Some clamored loud for armor lost;  
Some brawled and wrangled with the host;  
"By Becket's° bones," cried one, "I fear  
That some false Scot has stolen my spear!"  
Young Blount, Lord Marmion's second squire,  
Found his steed wet with sweat and mire,  
Although the rated horseboy sware  
Last night he dressed him sleek and fair.  
While chafed the impatient squire like thunder,  
Old Hubert shouts, in fear and wonder, —  
"Help, gentle Blount! help, comrades all!  
Bevis lies dying in his stall;  
To Marmion who the plight dare tell

Of the good steed he loves so well ? ”  
Gaping for fear and ruth, they saw  
The charger panting on his straw ;  
Till one, who would seem wisest, cried,  
“ What else but evil could betide,  
With that cursed Palmer for our guide ?  
Better we had through mire and bush  
Been lantern-led by Friar° Rush.”

3-

## II

Fitz-Eustace, who the cause° but guessed,  
Nor wholly understood,  
His comrades' clamorous complaints suppressed ;  
He knew Lord Marmion's mood.  
Him, ere he issued forth, he sought,  
And found deep plunged in gloomy thought,  
And did his tale display  
Simply, as if he knew° of nought  
To cause such disarray.  
Lord Marmion gave attention cold,  
Nor marvelled at the wonders told, —  
Passed them as accidents of course,  
And bade his clarions sound to horse.

4-

## III

Young Henry Blount, meanwhile, the cost  
Had reckoned with their Scottish host ;  
And, as the charge he cast and paid,  
“ Ill thou deserv'st thy hire,” he said ;  
“ Dost see, thou knave, my horse's plight ?  
Fairies have ridden him all the night,  
And left him in a foam !  
I trust that soon a conjuring band,

5:



With English cross and blazing brand,  
 Shall drive the devils from this land  
     To their infernal home ;  
 For in this haunted den, I trow,  
 All night they trampled to and fro.”  
 The laughing host looked on the hire :  
 “ Gramercy, gentle southern squire,  
 And if thou com’st among the rest,  
 With Scottish broadsword to be blest,  
 Sharp be the brand, and sure the blow,  
 And short the pang to undergo.”  
 Here stayed their talk, for Marmion  
 Gave now the signal to set on.  
 The Palmer showing forth the way,  
 They journeyed all the morning-day.

6c

## IV

The greensward way was smooth and good,  
 Through Humbie’s and through Saltoun’s wood ;  
 A forest glade, which, varying still,  
 Here gave a view of dale and hill,  
 There narrower closed till overhead  
 A vaulted<sup>o</sup> screen the branches made.  
 “ A pleasant path,” Fitz-Eustace said ;  
 “ Such as where errant-knights might see  
 Adventures of high chivalry,  
 Might meet some damsel flying fast,  
 With hair unbound and looks aghast ;  
 And smooth and level course were here,  
 In her defence to break a spear.  
 Here, too, are twilight nooks and dells ;  
 And oft in such, the story tells,  
 The damsel kind, from danger freed,

7c

8c

Did, grateful, pay her champion's meed."  
He spoke to cheer Lord Marmion's mind,  
Perchance to show his lore designed;

For Eustace much had pored  
Upon a huge romantic tome,  
In the hall-window of his home,  
Imprinted at the antique dome

Of Caxton° or de Worde.

Therefore he spoke, — but spoke in vain,  
For Marmion answered nought again.

90

## V

Now sudden, distant trumpets shrill,  
In notes prolonged by wood and hill,

Were heard to echo far;

Each ready archer grasped his bow,  
But by the flourish soon they know

They breathed no point of war.

Yet cautious, as in foeman's land,

Lord Marmion's order speeds the band

Some opener ground to gain;

And scarce a furlong had they rode,

When thinner trees receding showed

A little woodland plain.

Just in that advantageous glade

The halting troop a line had made,

As forth from the opposing shade

Issued a gallant train.

100

## VI

First came the trumpets, at whose clang

So late the forest echoes rang;

On prancing steeds they forward pressed,

110

With scarlet mantle, azure vest ;  
 Each at his trump a banner wore,  
 Which Scotland's royal scutcheon bore :  
 Heralds and pursuivants, by name  
 Bute, Islay, Marchmount, Rothsay, came,  
 In painted tabards, proudly showing  
 Gules, argent, or, and azure glowing,  
     Attendant on a king-at-arms,<sup>o</sup>  
 Whose hand the armorial truncheon held  
 That feudal strife had often quelled  
     When wildest its alarms.

120

## VII

He was a man of middle age,  
 In aspect manly, grave, and sage,  
     As on king's errand come ;  
 But in the glances of his eye  
 A penetrating, keen, and sly  
     Expression found its home ;  
 The flash of that satiric<sup>o</sup> rage  
 Which, bursting on the early stage,  
 Branded the vices of the age,  
     And broke the keys of Rome.  
 On milk-white palfrey forth he paced ;  
 His cap<sup>o</sup> of maintenance was graced  
     With the proud heron-plume.  
 From his steed's shoulder, loin, and breast,  
 Silk housings swept the ground,  
 With Scotland's arms, device, and crest,  
     Embroidered round and round.  
 The double tressure might you see,  
     First by Achaius borne,  
 The thistle and the fleur-de-lis,

130

140

And gallant unicorn.

So bright the king's armorial coat  
That scarce the dazzled eye could note,  
In living colors blazoned brave,  
The Lion, which his title gave;  
A train, which well beseeemed his state,  
But all unarmed, around him wait.

150

Still is thy name in high account,  
And still thy verse has charms,  
Sir David Lindesay of the Mount,  
Lord Lion King-at-arms!

## VIII

Down from his horse did Marmion spring  
Soon as he saw the Lion-King;  
For well the stately baron knew  
To him such courtesy was due  
Whom royal James<sup>o</sup> himself had crowned,  
And on his temples placed the round

160

Of Scotland's ancient diadem,  
And wet his brow with hallowed wine,  
And on his finger given to shine

The emblematic gem.

Their mutual greetings duly made,  
The Lion thus his message said: —  
“Though Scotland's King hath deeply swore  
Ne'er to knit faith with Henry more,  
And strictly hath forbid resort  
From England to his royal court,  
Yet, for he knows Lord Marmion's name  
And honors much his warlike fame,  
My liege hath deemed it shame and lack  
Of courtesy to turn him back;

170

And by his order I, your guide,  
 Must lodging fit and fair provide  
 Till finds King James meet time to see  
 The flower of English chivalry."

## IX

Though inly chafed at this delay,  
 Lord Marmion bears it as he may. 180  
 The Palmer, his mysterious guide,  
 Beholding thus his place supplied,  
     Sought to take leave in vain;  
 Strict was the Lion-King's command  
 That none who rode in Marmion's band  
     Should sever from the train.  
 "England has here enow of spies  
 In Lady Heron's witching eyes:"  
 To Marchmount thus apart he said,  
 But fair pretext to Marmion made. 190  
 The right-hand path<sup>o</sup> they now decline,  
 And trace against the stream the Tyne.

## X

At length up that wild dale they wind,  
 Where Crichtoun Castle<sup>o</sup> crowns the bank;  
 For there the Lion's care assigned  
     A lodging meet for Marmion's rank.  
 That castle rises on the steep  
     Of the green vale of Tyne;  
 And far beneath, where slow they creep  
 From pool to eddy, dark and deep,  
 Where alders moist and willows weep,  
 You hear her streams repine.  
 The towers in different ages rose,

200



Their various architecture shows  
 The builders' various hands ;  
 A mighty mass, that could oppose,  
 When deadliest hatred fired its foes,  
 The vengeful Douglas bands.

## XI

Crichtoun! though now thy miry court  
 But pens the lazy steer and sheep, 210  
 Thy turrets rude and tottered keep  
 Have been the minstrel's loved resort.  
 Oft have I traced, within thy fort,  
 Of mouldering shields the mystic sense,  
 Scutcheons of honor or pretence,  
 Quartered in old armorial sort,  
 Remains of rude magnificence.  
 Nor wholly yet hath time defaced  
 Thy lordly gallery fair,  
 Nor yet the stony cord unbraced 220  
 Whose twisted knots, with roses laced,  
 Adorn thy ruined stair.  
 Still rises unimpaired below  
 The court-yard's graceful portico ;  
 Above its cornice, row and row  
 Of fair hewn facets richly show  
 Their pointed diamond form.  
 Though there but houseless cattle go,  
 To shield them from the storm.  
 And, shuddering, still may we explore, 230  
 Where oft whilom were captives pent,  
 The darkness of thy Massy More,  
 Or, from thy grass-grown battlement,  
 May trace in undulating line  
 The sluggish mazes of the Tyne.

## XII

Another aspect Crichtoun showed  
 As through its portal Marmion rode ;  
 But yet 't was melancholy state  
 Received him at the outer gate,  
 For none were in the castle then 240  
 But women, boys, or aged men.  
 With eyes scarce dried, the sorrowing dame  
 To welcome noble Marmion came ;  
 Her son, a stripling twelve years old,  
 Proffered the baron's rein to hold ;  
 For each man that could draw a sword  
 Had marched that morning with their lord,  
 Earl Adam Hepburn, — he who died  
 On Flodden by his sovereign's side.  
 Long may his lady look in vain ! 250  
 She ne'er shall see his gallant train  
 Come sweeping back through Crichtoun-Dean.  
 'T was a brave race before the name  
 Of hated Bothwell° stained their fame.

## XIII

And here two days did Marmion rest,  
 With every right that honor claims,  
 Attended as the king's own guest ; —  
 Such the command of Royal James,  
 Who marshalled then his land's array,  
 Upon the Borough-moor that lay. 260  
 Perchance he would not foeman's eye  
 Upon his gathering host should pry,  
 Till full prepared was every band  
 To march against the English land.

Here while they dwelt, did Lindesay's wit  
 Oft cheer the baron's moodier fit;  
 And, in his turn, he knew to prize  
 Lord Marmion's powerful mind and wise, —  
 Trained in the lore of Rome and Greece,  
 And policies of war and peace.

270

## XIV

It chanced, as fell the second night,  
 That on the battlements they walked,  
 And by the slowly fading light  
 Of varying topics talked;  
 And, unaware, the herald-bard  
 Said Marmion might his toil have spared  
 In travelling so far,  
 For that a messenger from heaven  
 In vain to James had counsel given  
 Against the English war;  
 And, closer questioned, thus he told  
 A tale which chronicles of old  
 In Scottish story have enrolled: —

280

## XV

## SIR DAVID LINDESAY'S TALE

Of all the palaces so fair,  
 Built for the royal dwelling  
 In Scotland, far beyond compare  
 Linlithgow° is excelling;  
 And in its park, in jovial June,  
 How sweet the merry linnet's tune,  
 How blithe the blackbird's lay!  
 The wild buck bells° from ferny brake,

290

The coot dives merry on the lake,  
 The saddest heart might pleasure take  
 To see all nature gay.

But June is to our sovereign dear  
 The heaviest month in all the year;  
 Too well his cause of grief you know,  
 June saw his father's overthrow.<sup>o</sup>  
 Woe to the traitors who could bring  
 The princely boy against his king!  
 Still in his conscience burns the sting.  
 In offices as strict as Lent  
 King James's June is ever spent.

300

## XVI

When last this ruthful month was come,  
 And in Linlithgow's holy dome  
 The king, as wont, was praying;  
 While for his royal father's soul  
 The chanters sung, the bells did toll,  
 The bishop mass was saying —  
 For now the year brought round again  
 The day the luckless king was slain —  
 In Catherine's<sup>o</sup> aisle the monarch knelt,  
 With sackcloth shirt and iron belt,  
 And eyes with sorrow streaming;  
 Around him in their stalls of state  
 The Thistle's Knight-Companions sate,  
 Their banners o'er them beaming.

310

I too was there, and, sooth to tell,  
 Bedeafened with the jangling knell,  
 Was watching where the sunbeams fell,  
 Through the stained casement gleaming;  
 But while I marked what next befell

320

It seemed as I were dreaming.  
 Stepped from the crowd a ghostly wight,  
 In azure gown, with cincture white;  
 His forehead bald, his head was bare,  
 Down hung at length his yellow hair. —  
 Now, mock me not when, good my lord,  
 I pledge to you my knightly word  
 That when I saw his placid grace,  
 His simple majesty of face,  
 His solemn bearing, and his pace  
 So stately gliding on, —  
 Seemed to me ne'er did limner paint  
 So just an image of the saint  
 Who propped the Virgin in her faint,  
 The loved Apostle John!

330

## XVII

He stepped before the monarch's chair,  
 And stood with rustic plainness there,  
 And little reverence made;  
 Nor head, nor body, bowed, nor bent,  
 But on the desk his arm he leant,  
 And words like these he said,  
 In a low voice, — but never tone  
 So thrilled through vein, and nerve, and bone: —  
 "My mother sent me from afar,  
 Sir King, to warn thee not to war, —  
 Woe waits on thine array;  
 If war thou wilt, of woman fair,  
 Her witching wiles and wanton snare,  
 James Stuart, doubly warned, beware:  
 God keep thee as he may!" —  
 The wondering monarch seemed to seek

340

350



For answer, and found none;  
 And when he raised his head to speak,  
 The monitor was gone.  
 The marshal and myself had cast  
 To stop him as he outward passed;  
 But, lighter than the whirlwind's blast,  
 He vanished from our eyes,  
 Like sunbeam on the billow cast,  
 That glances but, and dies.

36c

## XVIII

While Lindesay told his marvel strange  
 The twilight was so pale,  
 He marked not Marmion's color change  
 While listening to the tale;  
 But, after a suspended pause,  
 The baron spoke: "Of Nature's laws  
 So strong I held the force,  
 That never superhuman cause  
 Could e'er control their course,  
 And, three days since, had judged your aim  
 Was but to make your guest your game;  
 But I have seen, since past the Tweed,  
 What much has changed my sceptic creed,  
 And made me credit aught." — He stayed,  
 And seemed to wish his words unsaid,  
 But, by that strong emotion pressed  
 Which prompts us to unload our breast  
 Even when discovery's pain  
 To Lindesay did at length unfold  
 The tale his village host had told  
 At Gifford to his train.  
 Nought of the Palmer says he there,

37c

38c

And nought of Constance or of Clare ;  
 The thoughts which broke his sleep he seems  
 To mention but as feverish dreams.

## XIX

“ In vain,” said he, “ to rest I spread  
 My burning limbs, and couched my head ;

Fantastic thoughts returned,  
 And, by their wild dominion led,  
 My heart within me burned.

39c

So sore was the delirious goad,  
 I took my steed and forth I rode,  
 And, as the moon shone bright and cold,  
 Soon reached the camp upon the wold.

The southern entrance I passed through,  
 And halted, and my bugle blew.

Methought an answer met my ear, —

Yet was the blast so low and drear,  
 So hollow, and so faintly blown,

400

It might be echo of my own.

## XX

“ Thus judging, for a little space  
 I listened ere I left the place,

But scarce could trust my eyes,  
 Nor yet can think they serve me true,  
 When sudden in the ring I view,  
 In form distinct of shape and hue,

A mounted champion rise. —  
 I’ve fought, Lord-Lion, many a day,  
 In single fight and mixed affray,  
 And ever, I myself may say,

410

Have borne me as a knight ;

But when this unexpected foe  
 Seemed starting from the gulf below, —  
 I care not though the truth I show, —  
     I trembled with affright;  
 And, as I placed in rest my spear,  
 My hand so shook for very fear,  
     I scarce could couch it right.

420

## XXI

“ Why need my tongue the issue tell?  
 We ran our course, — my charger fell; —  
 What could he 'gainst the shock of hell?  
     I rolled upon the plain.  
 High o'er my head with threatening hand  
 The spectre shook his naked brand, —  
     Yet did the worst remain:  
 My dazzled eyes I upward cast, —  
 Not opening hell itself could blast  
     Their sight like what I saw!  
 Full on his face the moonbeam strook! —  
 A face could never be mistook!  
 I knew the stern vindictive look,  
     And held my breath for awe.  
 I saw the face of one who, fled  
 To foreign climes, has long been dead, —  
     I well believe the last;  
 For ne'er from visor raised did stare  
 A human warrior with a glare  
     So grimly and so ghast.  
 Thrice o'er my head he shook the blade;  
 But when to good Saint George I prayed, —  
 The first time e'er I asked his aid, —  
     He plunged it in the sheath,

130

440

And, on his courser mounting light,  
 He seemed to vanish from my sight :  
 The moonbeam drooped, and deepest night  
 Sunk down upon the heath. —

'T were long to tell what cause I have  
 To know his face that met me there,  
 Called by his hatred from the grave  
 To cumber upper air ;  
 Dead or alive, good cause had he  
 To be my mortal enemy."

45c

## XXII

Marvelled Sir David of the Mount ;  
 Then, learned in story, 'gan recount  
 Such chance had happed of old,  
 When once, near Norham, there did fight  
 A spectre fell of fiendish might,  
 In likeness of a Scottish knight,

46c

With Brian Bulmer bold,  
 And trained him nigh to disallow  
 The aid or his baptismal vow.

" And such a phantom, too, 't is said,  
 With Highland broadsword, targe, and plaid,

And fingers red with gore,  
 Is seen in Rothiemurcus glade,  
 Or where the sable pine-trees shade  
 Dark Tomantoul, and Auchnaslaid,

Dromouchty, or Glenmore.

47c

And yet, whate'er such legends say  
 Of warlike demon, ghost, or fay,

On mountain, moor, or plain,  
 Spotless in faith, in bosom bold,  
 True son of chivalry should hold

These midnight terrors vain ;  
 For seldom have such spirits power  
 To harm, save in the evil hour  
 When guilt we meditate within  
 Or harbor unrepented sin." —  
 Lord Marmion turned him half aside,  
 And twice to clear his voice he tried,  
     Then pressed Sir David's hand, —  
 But nought, at length, in answer said ;  
 And here their further converse stayed,  
     Each ordering that his band  
 Should bowne them with the rising day,  
 To Scotland's camp to take their way, —  
     Such was the king's command.

480

## XXIII

Early they took Dun-Edin's° road,  
 And I could trace each step they trode ;  
 Hill, brook, nor dell, nor rock, nor stone,  
 Lies on the path to me unknown.  
 Much might it boast of storied lore ;  
 But, passing such digression o'er,  
 Suffice it that their route was laid  
 Across the furzy hills of Braid.  
 They passed the glen and scanty rill,  
 And climbed the opposing bank, until  
 They gained the top of Blackford Hill.

490

500

## XXIV

Blackford ! on whose uncultured breast,  
     Among the broom and thorn and whin,  
 A truant-boy, I sought the nest,  
 Or listed, as I lay at rest,



While rose on breezes thin  
 The murmur of the city crowd,  
 And, from his steeple jangling loud,  
 Saint Giles's mingling din.  
 Now, from the summit to the plain,  
 Waves all the hill with yellow grain; 510  
 And o'er the landscape as I look,  
 Nought do I see unchanged remain,  
 Save the rude cliffs and chiming brook.  
 To me they make a heavy moan  
 Of early friendships past and gone.

## XXV

But different far the change has been,  
 Since Marmion from the crown  
 Of Blackford saw that martial scene  
 Upon the bent so brown:  
 Thousand pavilions, white as snow, 520  
 Spread all the Borough-moor<sup>o</sup> below,  
 Upland, and dale, and down.  
 A thousand did I say? I ween,  
 Thousands on thousands there were seen.  
 That checkered all the heath between  
 The streamlet and the town,  
 In crossing ranks extending far,  
 Forming a camp irregular;  
 Oft giving way where still there stood  
 Some relics of the old oak wood, 530  
 That darkly huge did intervene  
 And tamed the glaring white with green:  
 In these extended lines there lay  
 A martial kingdom's vast array.

## XXVI

For from Hebudes,<sup>o</sup> dark with rain,  
To eastern Lodon's fertile plain,  
And from the southern Redswire edge  
To furthest Rosse's rocky ledge,  
From west to east, from south to north,  
Scotland sent all her warriors forth. 540  
Marmion might hear the mingled hum  
Of myriads up the mountain come, —  
The horses' tramp and tinkling clank,  
Where chiefs reviewed their vassal rank,  
    And charger's shrilling neigh, —  
And see the shifting lines advance,  
While frequent flashed from shield and lance  
    The sun's reflected ray.

## XXVII

Thin curling in the morning air,  
The wreaths of failing smoke declare 550  
To embers now the brands decayed,  
Where the night-watch their fires had made.  
They saw, slow rolling on the plain,  
Full many a baggage-cart and wain,  
And dire artillery's clumsy car,  
By sluggish oxen tugged to war;  
And there were Borthwick's Sisters Seven,<sup>o</sup>  
And culverins which France had given.  
Ill-omened gift! the guns remain  
The conqueror's spoil on Flodden plain. 560

## XXVIII

Nor marked they less where in the air  
 A thousand streamers flaunted fair ;  
     Various in shape, device, and hue,  
     Green, sanguine, purple, red, and blue,  
 Broad, narrow, swallow-tailed, and square,  
 Scroll, pennon, pencil, bandrol, there  
     O'er the pavilions flew.

Highest and midmost, was descried  
 The royal banner floating wide ;

The staff, a pine-tree, strong and straight, 57c  
 Pitched deeply in a massive stone,<sup>o</sup>  
 Which still in memory is shown,

Yet bent beneath the standard's weight,  
     Whene'er the western wind unrolled  
     With toil the huge and cumbrous fold,  
 And gave to view the dazzling field,  
 Where in proud Scotland's royal shield  
     The ruddy lion ramped in gold.

## XXIX

Lord Marmion viewed the landscape bright, —  
 He viewed it with a chief's delight, — 58c

Until within him burned his heart,  
 And lightning from his eye did part,  
     As on the battle-day ;

Such glance did falcon never dart  
     When stooping on his prey.

“ Oh ! well, Lord-Lion, hast thou said,  
 Thy king from warfare to dissuade  
     Were but a vain essay ;

For, by Saint George, were that host mine,

Not power infernal nor divine 59c  
 Should once to peace my soul incline,  
 Till I had dimmed their armor's shine  
     In glorious battle-fray!"  
 Answered the bard, of milder mood:  
 "Fair is the sight, — and yet 't were good  
     That kings would think withal,  
 When peace and wealth their land has blessed,  
 'T is better to sit still at rest  
     Than rise, perchance to fall."

## XXX

Still on the spot Lord Marmion stayed, 60c  
 For fairer scene he ne'er surveyed.  
 When sated with the martial show  
 That peopled all the plain below  
 The wandering eye could o'er it go,  
 And mark the distant city glow  
     With gloomy splendor red;  
 For on the smoke-wreaths, huge and slow,  
 That round her sable turrets flow,  
     The morning beams were shed, 61c  
 And tinged them with a lustre proud,  
 Like that which streaks a thunder-cloud.  
 Such dusky grandeur clothed the height  
 Where the huge castle holds its state,  
     And all the steep slope down,  
 Whose ridgy back heaves to the sky,  
 Piled deep and massy, close and high,  
     Mine own romantic town!  
 But northward far, with purer blaze,  
 On Ochil mountains fell the rays,  
 And as each heathy top they kissed, 620

It gleamed a purple amethyst.  
 Yonder the shores of Fife you saw,  
 Here Preston-Bay and Berwick-Law°;  
     And, broad between them rolled,  
 The gallant Firth the eye might note,  
 Whose islands on its bosom float,  
     Like emeralds chased in gold.  
 Fitz-Eustace's heart felt closely pent;  
 As if to give his rapture vent,  
 The spur he to his charger lent, 63c  
     And raised his bridle hand,  
 And making demi-volt in air  
 Cried, "Where's the coward that would not dare  
     To fight for such a land!"  
 The Lindesay smiled his joy to see,  
 Nor Marmion's frown repressed his glee.

## XXXI

Thus while they looked, a flourish proud,  
 Where mingled trump, and clarion loud,  
     And fife, and kettle-drum,  
 And sackbut deep, and psaltery, 64c  
 And war-pipe with discordant cry,  
 And cymbal clattering to the sky,  
 Making wild music bold and high,  
     Did up the mountain come;  
 The whilst the bells with distant chime  
 Merrily tolled the hour of prime,  
     And thus the Lindesay spoke:  
 "Thus clamor still the war-notes when  
 The king to mass his way has ta'en,  
 Or to Saint Catherine's° of Sienne, 65c  
     Or Chapel of Saint Rocque.



To you they speak of martial fame,  
 But me remind of peaceful game,  
 When blither was their cheer,  
 Thrilling in Falkland-woods the air,  
 In signal none his steed should spare,  
 But strive which foremost might repair  
 To the downfall of the deer.

## XXXII

“Nor less,” he said, “when looking forth  
 I view yon Empress of the North 66c  
 Sit on her hilly throne,  
 Her palace’s imperial bowers,  
 Her castle, proof to hostile powers,  
 Her stately halls and holy towers —  
 Nor less,” he said, “I moan  
 To think what woe mischance may bring,  
 And how these merry bells may ring  
 The death-dirge of our gallant king,  
 Or with their larum call  
 The burghers forth to watch and ward, 67o  
 ’Gainst Southern sack and fires to guard  
 Dun-Edin’s leaguered wall. —  
 But not for my presaging thought,  
 Dream conquest sure or cheaply bought!  
 Lord Marmion, I say nay :  
 God is the guider of the field,  
 He breaks the champion’s spear and shield, —  
 But thou thyself shalt say,  
 When joins yon host in deadly stowre,  
 That England’s dames must weep in bower, 68c  
 Her monks the death-mass sing ;  
 For never saw’st thou such a power

Led on by such a king.”  
And now, down winding to the plain,  
The barriers of the camp they gain,  
And there they made a stay. —  
There stays the Minstrel, till he fling  
His hand o'er every Border string,  
And fit his harp the pomp to sing  
Of Scotland's ancient court and king,  
In the succeeding lay.

## INTRODUCTION TO CANTO FIFTH

TO GEORGE ELLIS, ESQ.

*Edinburgh*

WHEN dark December glooms the day,  
And takes our autumn joys away;  
When short and scant the sunbeam throws  
Upon the weary waste of snows  
A cold and profitless regard,  
Like patron on a needy bard;  
When sylvan occupation's done,  
And o'er the chimney rests the gun,  
And hang in idle trophy near,  
The game-pouch, fishing-rod, and spear; 10  
When wiry terrier, rough and grim,  
And greyhound, with his length of limb,  
And pointer, now employed no more,  
Cumber our parlor's narrow floor;  
When in his stall the impatient steed  
Is long condemned to rest and feed;  
When from our snow-encircled home  
Scarce cares the hardiest step to roam,  
Since path is none, save that to bring  
The needful water from the spring; 20  
When wrinkled news-page, thrice conned o'er,  
Beguiles the dreary hour no more,  
And darkling politician, crossed,  
Inveighs against the lingering post,  
And answering housewife sore complains

Of carriers' snow-impeded wains; —  
 When such the country-cheer, I come  
 Well pleased to seek our city home°;  
 For converse and for books to change  
 The Forest's melancholy range,  
 And welcome with renewed delight  
 The busy day and social night.

3c

Not here need my desponding rhyme  
 Lament the ravages of time,°  
 As erst by Newark's riven towers,  
 And Ettrick stripped of forest bowers.  
 True, Caledonia's Queen° is changed  
 Since on her dusky summit ranged,  
 Within its steepy limits pent  
 By bulwark, line, and battlement,  
 And flanking towers, and laky flood,°  
 Guarded and garrisoned she stood,  
 Denying entrance or resort  
 Save at each tall embattled port,  
 Above whose arch, suspended, hung  
 Portcullis spiked with iron prong.  
 That long is gone, — but not so long  
 Since, early closed and opening late,  
 Jealous revolved the studded gate,  
 Whose task, from eve to morning tide,  
 A wicket churlishly supplied.  
 Stern then and steel-girt was thy brow,  
 Dun-Edin! Oh, how altered now,  
 When safe amid thy mountain court  
 Thou sitt'st, like empress at her sport,  
 And liberal, unconfined, and free,  
 Flinging thy white arms to the sea.  
 For thy dark cloud, with umbered lower,

4c

5c

That hung o'er cliff and lake and tower,  
 Thou gleam'st against the western ray 60  
 Ten thousand lines of brighter day!

Not she, the championess of old,  
 In Spenser's magic tale enrolled,  
 She for the charmed spear renowned,  
 Which forced each knight to kiss the ground, —  
 Not she more changed, when, placed at rest,  
 What time she was Malbecco's guest,  
 She gave to flow her maiden vest;  
 When, from the corselet's grasp relieved,  
 Free to the sight her bosom heaved : 70  
 Sweet was her blue eye's modest smile,  
 Erst hidden by the aventayle,  
 And down her shoulders graceful rolled  
 Her locks profuse of paly gold.  
 They, who whilom in midnight fight  
 Had marvelled at her matchless might,  
 No less her maiden charms approved,  
 But looking liked, and liking loved.  
 The sight could jealous pangs beguile,  
 And charm Malbecco's cares awhile ; 80  
 And he, the wandering Squire of Dames,  
 Forgot his Columbella's claims,  
 And passion, erst unknown, could gain  
 The breast of blunt Sir Satyrane ;  
 Nor durst light Paridell advance,  
 Bold as he was, a looser glance.  
 She charmed, at once, and tamed the heart,  
 Incomparable Britomart!

So thou, fair City! disarrayed  
 Of battled wall and rampart's aid, 90



As stately seem'st, but lovelier far  
 Than in that panoply of war.  
 Nor deem that from thy fenceless throne  
 Strength and security are flown ;  
 Still as of yore, Queen of the North !  
 Still canst thou send thy children forth.  
 Ne'er readier at alarm-bell's call  
 Thy burghers rose to man thy wall  
 Than now, in danger, shall be thine,  
 Thy dauntless voluntary line ; 100  
 For fosse and turret proud to stand,  
 Their breasts the bulwarks of the land.  
 Thy thousands, trained to martial toil,  
 Full red would stain their native soil,  
 Ere from thy mural crown there fell  
 The slightest knosp or pinnacle.  
 And if it come, as come it may,  
 Dun-Edin ! that eventful day,  
 Renowned for hospitable deed,  
 That virtue much with Heaven may plead 110  
 In patriarchal times whose care  
 Descending angels deigned to share ;  
 That claim may wrestle blessings down  
 On those who fight for the Good Town,  
 Destined in every age to be  
 Refuge of injured royalty ;  
 Since first, when conquering York arose,  
 To Henry<sup>o</sup> meek she gave repose,  
 Till late, with wonder, grief, and awe,  
 Great Bourbon's relics<sup>o</sup> sad she saw. 120

Truce to these thoughts ! — for, as they rise,  
 How gladly I avert mine eyes,

Bodings, or true or false, to change  
 For Fiction's fair romantic range,  
 Or for Tradition's dubious light,  
 That hovers 'twixt the day and night:  
 Dazzling alternately and dim,  
 Her wavering lamp I'd rather trim,  
 Knights, squires, and lovely dames to see,  
 Creation of my fantasy, 130  
 Than gaze abroad on reeky fen,  
 And make of mists invading men. —  
 Who loves not more the night of June  
 Than dull December's gloomy noon?  
 The moonlight than the fog of frost?  
 And can we say which cheats the most?

But who shall teach my harp to gain  
 A sound of the romantic strain  
 Whose Anglo-Norman tones<sup>o</sup> whilere  
 Could win the royal Henry's ear, 140  
 Famed Beauclerk called, for that he loved  
 The minstrel and his lay approved?  
 Who shall these lingering notes redeem,  
 Decaying on Oblivion's stream;  
 Such notes as from the Breton tongue  
 Marie translated, Blondel sung? —  
 Oh! born Time's ravage to repair,  
 And make the dying Muse thy care;  
 Who, when his scythe her hoary foe  
 Was poising for the final blow, 150  
 The weapon from his hand could wring,  
 And break his glass and shear his wing,  
 And bid, reviving in his strain,  
 The gentle poet live again;

Thou, who canst give to lightest lay  
An unpedantic moral gay,  
Nor less the dullest theme bid flit  
On wings of unexpected wit;  
In letters as in life approved,  
Example honored and beloved, —  
Dear ELLIS! to the bard impart  
A lesson of thy magic art,  
To win at once the head and heart, —  
At once to charm, instruct, and mend,  
My guide, my pattern, and my friend!

160

Such minstrel lesson to bestow  
Be long thy pleasing task, — but, oh!  
No more by thy example teach  
What few can practise, all can preach, —  
With even patience to endure  
Lingering disease and painful cure,  
And boast affliction's pangs subdued  
By mild and manly fortitude.  
Enough, the lesson has been given:  
Forbid the repetition, Heaven!

170

Come listen, then! for thou hast known  
And loved the Minstrel's varying tone,  
Who, like his Border sires of old,  
Waked a wild measure rude and bold,  
Till Windsor's oaks<sup>o</sup> and Ascot plain  
With wonder heard the Northern strain.  
Come listen! bold in thy applause,  
The bard shall scorn pedantic laws;  
And, as the ancient art could stain

180

Achievements on the storied pane,  
Irregularly traced and planned,  
But yet so glowing and so grand,  
So shall he strive, in changeful hue,  
Field, feast, and combat to renew,  
And loves, and arms, and harpers' glee,  
And all the pomp of chivalry.

## CANTO FIFTH

### THE COURT

#### I

THE train has left the hills of Braid ;  
The barrier guard have open made —  
So Lindesay bade — the palisade  
That closed the tented ground ;  
Their men the warders backward drew,  
And carried pikes as they rode through  
Into its ample bound.

Fast ran the Scottish warriors there,  
Upon the Southern band to stare,  
And envy with their wonder rose,  
To see such well-appointed foes ;  
Such length of shafts, such mighty bows,  
So huge that many simply thought  
But for a vaunt such weapons wrought,  
And little deemed their force to feel  
Through links of mail and plates of steel  
When, rattling upon Flodden vale,  
The cloth-yard arrows flew like hail.

10

#### II

Nor less did Marmion's skilful view  
Glance every line and squadron through,  
And much he marvelled one small land  
Could marshal forth such various band ;  
For men-at-arms were here,

20



Heavily sheathed in mail and plate,  
 Like iron towers for strength and weight,  
 On Flemish steeds of bone and height,  
     With battle-axe and spear.  
 Young knights and squires, a lighter train,  
 Practised their chargers on the plain,  
 By aid of leg, of hand, and rein, 30  
     Each warlike feat to show,  
 To pass, to wheel, the croupe to gain,  
 And high curvet, that not in vain  
 The sword-sway might descend amain  
     On foeman's casque below.  
 He saw the hardy burghers there  
 March armed on foot with faces bare,  
     For visor they wore none,  
 Nor waving plume, nor crest of knight;  
 But burnished were their corselets bright, 40  
 Their brigantines and gorgets light  
     Like very silver shone.  
 Long pikes they had for standing fight,  
     Two-handed swords they wore,  
 And many wielded mace of weight,  
     And bucklers bright they bore.

## III

On foot the yeoman too, but dressed  
 In his steel-jack, a swarthy vest,  
     With iron quilted well;  
 Each at his back — a slender store — 50  
 His forty days' provision<sup>o</sup> bore,  
     As feudal statutes tell.  
 His arms were halbert, axe, or spear,  
 A crossbow there, a hagbut here,

A dagger-knife, and brand.  
 Sober he seemed and sad of cheer,  
 As loath to leave his cottage dear  
 And march to foreign strand,  
 Or musing who would guide his steer  
 To till the fallow land. 60  
 Yet deem not in his thoughtful eye  
 Did aught of dastard terror lie;  
 More dreadful far his ire  
 Than theirs who, scorning danger's name,  
 In eager mood to battle came,  
 Their valor like light straw on flame,  
 A fierce but fading fire.

IV

Not so the Borderer: — bred to war,  
 He knew the battle's din afar,  
 And joyed to hear it swell. 70  
 His peaceful day was slothful ease;  
 Nor harp nor pipe his ear could please  
 Like the loud slogan yell.  
 On active steed, with lance and blade,  
 The light-armed pricker plied his trade, —  
 Let nobles fight for fame;  
 Let vassals follow where they lead,  
 Burghers, to guard their townships, bleed,  
 But war's the Borderers' game.  
 Their gain, their glory, their delight, 80  
 To sleep the day, maraud the night,  
 O'er mountain, moss, and moor;  
 Joyful to fight they took their way,  
 Scarce caring° who might win the day,  
 Their booty was secure.

These, as Lord Marmion's train passed by,  
 Looked on at first with careless eye,  
 Nor marvelled aught, well taught to know  
 The form and force of English bow.  
 But when they saw the lord arrayed 90  
 In splendid arms and rich brocade,  
 Each Borderer to his kinsman said, —  
 “Hist, Ringan! seest thou there!  
 Canst guess which road they'll homeward ride?  
 Oh! could we but on Border side,  
 By Eusedale glen, or Liddell's tide,  
 Beset a prize so fair!  
 That fangless Lion, too, their guide,  
 Might chance to lose his glistering hide;  
 Brown Maudlin of that doublet pied 100  
 Could make a kirtle rare.”

## V

Next, Marmion marked the Celtic race,  
 Of different language, form, and face,  
 A various race of man;  
 Just then the chiefs their tribes arrayed,  
 And wild and garish semblance made  
 The checkered trews and belted plaid,  
 And varying notes the war-pipes brayed  
 To every varying clan.  
 Wild through their red or sable hair 110  
 Looked out their eyes with savage stare  
 On Marmion as he passed;  
 Their legs above the knee were bare;  
 Their frame was sinewy, short, and spare,  
 And hardened to the blast;  
 Of taller race, the chiefs they own

Were by the eagle's plumage known.  
The hunted red-deer's undressed hide  
Their hairy buskins well supplied;  
The graceful bonnet decked their head; 120  
Back from their shoulders hung the plaid;  
A broadsword of unwieldy length,  
A dagger proved for edge and strength,  
A studded targe they wore,  
And quivers, bows, and shafts, — but, oh!  
Short was the shaft and weak the bow  
To that which England bore.  
The Isles-men carried at their backs  
The ancient Danish battle-axe.  
They raised a wild and wondering cry, 130  
As with his guide rode Marmion by.  
Loud were their clamoring tongues, as when  
The clanging sea-fowl leave the fen,  
And, with their cries discordant mixed,  
Grumbled and yelled the pipes betwixt.

## VI

Thus through the Scottish camp they passed,  
And reached the city gate at last,  
Where all around, a wakeful guard,  
Armed burghers kept their watch and ward.  
Well had they cause of jealous fear, 140  
When lay encamped in field so near  
The Borderer and the Mountaineer.  
As through the bustling streets they go,  
All was alive with martial show;  
At every turn with dinning clang  
The armorer's anvil clashed and rang,  
Or toiled the swarthy smith to wheel<sup>c</sup>

The bar that arms the charger's heel,  
 Or axe or falchion to the side  
 Of jarring grindstone was applied. 150  
 Page, groom, and squire, with hurrying pace,  
 Through street and lane and market-place,  
     Bore lance or casque or sword ;  
 While burghers, with important face,  
     Described each new-come lord,  
 Discussed his lineage, told his name,  
 His following, and his warlike fame.  
 The Lion led to lodging meet,  
 Which high o'erlooked the crowded street ;  
     There must the baron rest 160  
 Till past the hour of vesper tide,  
 And then to Holy-Rood must ride, —  
     Such was the king's behest.  
 Meanwhile the Lion's care assigns  
 A banquet rich and costly wines  
     To Marmion and his train ;  
 And when the appointed hour succeeds,  
 The baron dons his peaceful weeds,  
 And following Lindesay as he leads,  
     The palace halls they gain. 170

## VII

Old Holy-Rood rung merrily  
 That night with wassail,° mirth, and glee :  
 King James within her princely bower  
 Feasted the chiefs of Scotland's power,  
 Summoned to spend the parting hour ;  
 For he had charged that his array  
 Should southward march by break of day  
 Well loved that splendid monarch eye



The banquet and the song,  
 By day the tourney, and by night 180  
 The merry dance, traced fast and light,  
 The maskers quaint, the pageant bright,  
 The revel loud and long.  
 This feast outshone his banquets past;  
 It was his blithest — and his last.  
 The dazzling lamps from gallery gay  
 Cast on the court a dancing ray;  
 Here to the harp did minstrels sing,  
 There ladies touched a softer string;  
 With long-eared cap and motley vest, 190  
 The licensed fool retailed his jest;  
 His magic tricks the juggler plied;  
 At dice and draughts the gallants vied;  
 While some, in close recess apart,  
 Courted the ladies of their heart,  
 Nor courted them in vain;  
 For often in the parting hour  
 Victorious Love asserts his power  
 O'er coldness and disdain;  
 And flinty is her heart can view 200  
 To battle march a lover true —  
 Can hear, perchance, his last adieu,  
 Nor own her share of pain.

## VIII

Through this mixed crowd of glee and game  
 The king to greet Lord Marmion came,  
 While, reverent, all made room.  
 An easy task it was, I trow,  
 King James's manly form to know,  
 Although, his courtesy to show,

He doffed to Marmion bending low 210  
     His broidered cap and plume.  
 For royal were his garb and mien :  
     His cloak of crimson velvet piled,  
     Trimmed with the fur of marten wild,  
 His vest of changeful satin sheen,  
     The dazzled eye beguiled ;  
 His gorgeous collar hung adown,  
 Wrought with the badge of Scotland's crown,  
 The thistle brave of old renown ;  
 His trusty blade, Toledo right, 220  
 Descended from a baldric bright ;  
 White were his buskins, on the heel  
 His spurs inlaid of gold and steel ;  
 His bonnet, all of crimson fair,  
 Was buttoned with a ruby rare :  
 And Marmion deemed he ne'er had seen  
 A prince of such a noble mien.

## IX

The monarch's form was middle size,  
 For feat of strength or exercise  
     Shaped in proportion fair ; 230  
 And hazel was his eagle eye,  
 And auburn of the darkest dye  
     His short curled beard and hair.  
 Light was his footstep in the dance,  
     And firm his stirrup in the lists ;  
 And, oh ! he had that merry glance  
     That seldom lady's heart resists.  
 Lightly from rair to fair he flew,  
 And loved to plead, lament, and sue, —  
 Suit lightly won and short-lived pain, 240

For monarchs seldom sigh in vain.

I said he joyed in banquet bower ;  
But, mid his mirth, 't was often strange  
How suddenly his cheer would change,

His look o'ercast and lower,  
If in a sudden turn he felt  
The pressure of his iron belt,  
That bound his breast in penance pain,  
In memory of his father slain.

Even so 't was strange how evermore,  
Soon as the passing pang was o'er,  
Forward he rushed with double glee  
Into the stream of revelry.

25c

Thus dim-seen object of affright  
Startles the courser in his flight,  
And half he halts, half springs aside,  
But feels the quickening spur applied,  
And, straining on the tightened rein,  
Scours doubly swift o'er hill and plain.

## X

O'er James's heart, the courtiers say,  
Sir Hugh the Heron's wife held sway ;

260

To Scotland's court° she came  
To be a hostage for her lord,  
Who Cessford's gallant heart had gored,  
And with the king to make accord  
Had sent his lovely dame.

Nor to that lady free alone  
Did the gay king allegiance own ;

For the fair Queen of France  
Sent him a turquoise ring° and glove,  
And charged him, as her knight and love,

270

For her to break a lance,  
 And strike three strokes with Scottish brand,  
 And march three miles on Southron land,  
 And bid the banners of his band

In English breezes dance.

And thus for France's queen he drest  
 His manly limbs in mailed vest,  
 And thus admitted English fair  
 His inmost counsels still to share,  
 And thus for both he madly planned  
 The ruin of himself and land!

280

And yet, the sooth to tell,  
 Nor England's fair nor France's queen  
 Were worth one pearl-drop, bright and sheen,  
 From Margaret's eyes that fell, —  
 His own Queen Margaret, who in Lithgow's<sup>o</sup> bower  
 All lonely sat and wept the weary hour.

## XI

The queen sits lone in Lithgow pile,  
 And weeps the weary day  
 The war against her native soil,  
 Her monarch's risk in battle broil, —  
 And in gay Holy-Rood the while  
 Dame Heron rises with a smile

290

Upon the harp to play.  
 Fair was her rounded arm, as o'er  
 The strings her fingers flew ;  
 And as she touched and tuned them all,  
 Ever her bosom's rise and fall

Was plainer given to view ;  
 For, all for heat, was laid aside  
 Her wimple, and her hood untied.

300

And first she pitched her voice to sing,  
Then glanced her dark eye on the king,  
And then around the silent ring,  
And laughed, and blushed, and oft did say  
Her pretty oath, by yea and nay,  
She could not, would not, durst not play!  
At length, upon the harp, with glee,  
Mingled with arch simplicity,  
A soft yet lively air she rung,  
While thus the wily lady sung : —

310

## XII

## Lochinvar

## LADY HERON'S SONG

Oh! young Lochinvar is come out of the west,  
Through all the wide Border his steed was the best;  
And save his good broadsword he weapons had none,  
He rode all unarmed and he rode all alone.  
So faithful in love and so dauntless in war,  
There never was knight like the young Lochinvar.

He stayed not for brake and he stopped not for stone,  
He swam the Eske river where ford there was none; 320  
But ere he alighted at Netherby gate  
The bride had consented, the gallant came late:  
For a laggard in love and a dastard in war  
Was to wed the fair Ellen of brave Lochinvar.

So boldly he entered the Netherby Hall,  
Among bridesmen, and kinsmen, and brothers, and all:



Then spoke the bride's father, his hand on his sword, —  
 For the poor craven bridegroom said never a word, —  
 "Oh! come ye in peace here, or come ye in war,  
 Or to dance at our bridal, young Lord Lochinvar?" —

"I long wooed your daughter, my suit you denied; 331  
 Love swells like the Solway, but ebbs like its tide —  
 And now am I come, with this lost love of mine,  
 To lead but one measure, drink one cup of wine.  
 There are maidens in Scotland more lovely by far,  
 That would gladly be bride to the young Lochinvar."

The bride kissed the goblet; the knight took it up,  
 He quaffed off the wine, and he threw down the cup.  
 She looked down to blush, and she looked up to sigh,  
 With a smile on her lips and a tear in her eye. 340  
 He took her soft hand ere her mother could bar, —  
 "Now tread we a measure!" said young Lochinvar.

So stately his form, and so lovely her face,  
 That never a hall such a galliard did grace;  
 While her mother did fret, and her father did fume,  
 And the bridegroom stood dangling his bonnet and plume;  
 And the bride-maidens whispered, "'T were better by far  
 To have matched our fair cousin with young Lochinvar."

One touch to her hand and one word in her ear,  
 When they reached the hall-door, and the charger stood  
 near; 350  
 So light to the croupe the fair lady he swung,  
 So light to the saddle before her he sprung!  
 "She is won! we are gone, over bank, bush, and scaur;  
 They'll have fleet steeds that follow," quoth young  
 Lochinvar.

There was mounting 'mong Græmes of the Netherby  
clan;

Forsters, Fenwicks, and Musgraves, they rode and they  
ran:

There was racing and chasing on Cannobie Lee,  
But the lost bride of Netherby ne'er did they see.

So daring in love and so dauntless in war,  
Have ye e'er heard of gallant like young Lochinvar? 360

## XIII

The monarch o'er the siren hung,  
And beat the measure as she sung;  
And, pressing closer and more near,  
He whispered praises in her ear.

In loud applause the courtiers vied,  
And ladies winked and spoke aside.

The witching dame to Marmion threw

A glance, where seemed to reign  
The pride that claims applauses due,  
And of her royal conquest too

37c

A real or feigned disdain:

Familiar was the look, and told  
Marmion and she were friends of old.

The king observed their meeting eyes  
With something like displeas'd surprise;

For monarchs ill can rivals brook,  
Even in a word, or smile, or look.

Straight took he forth the parchment broad  
Which Marmion's high commission showed:

"Our Borders sacked by many a raid,  
Our peaceful liege-men robbed," he said,

38c

"On day of truce our warden slain,  
Stout Barton killed, his vessels ta'en —

Unworthy were we here to reign,  
 Should these for vengeance cry in vain;  
 Our full defiance, hate, and scorn,  
 Our herald has to Henry borne."

## XIV

He paused, and led where Douglas stood  
 And with stern eye the pageant viewed;  
 I mean that Douglas, sixth of yore, 390  
 Who coronet of Angus bore,  
 And, when his blood and heart were high,  
 Did the third James in camp defy,  
 And all his minions led to die  
 On Lauder's dreary flat.  
 Princes and favorites long grew tame,  
 And trembled at the homely name  
 Of Archibald Bell-the-Cat°;  
 The same who left the dusky vale°  
 Of Hermitage in Liddisdale, 400  
 Its dungeons and its towers,  
 Where Bothwell's turrets brave the air,  
 And Bothwell bank is blooming fair,  
 To fix his princely bowers.  
 Though now in age he had laid down  
 His armor for the peaceful gown,  
 And for a staff his brand,  
 Yet often would flash forth the fire  
 That could in youth a monarch's ire  
 And minion's pride withstand; 410  
 And even that day at council board,  
 Unapt to soothe his sovereign's mood,  
 Against the war° had Angus stood,  
 And chafed his royal lord.

## XV

His giant-form, like ruined tower,  
Though fallen its muscles' brawny vaunt,  
Huge-boned, and tall, and grim, and gaunt,  
Seemed o'er the gaudy scene to lower;  
His locks and beard in silver grew,  
His eyebrows kept their sable hue. 420  
Near Douglas when the monarch stood,  
His bitter speech he thus pursued:  
"Lord Marmion, since these letters say  
That in the North you needs must stay  
While slightest hopes of peace remain,  
Uncourteous speech it were and stern  
To say — Return to Lindisfarn,  
Until my herald come again.  
Then rest you in Tantallon hold°;  
Your host shall be the Douglas bold, — 430  
A chief unlike his sires of old.  
He wears their motto on his blade,  
Their blazon o'er his towers displayed,  
Yet loves his sovereign to oppose  
More than to face his country's foes.  
And, I bethink me, by Saint Stephen,  
But e'en this morn to me was given  
A prize, the first fruits of the war,  
Ta'en by a galley from Dunbar,  
A bevy° of the maids of heaven. 440  
Under your guard these holy maids  
Shall safe return to cloister shades,  
And, while they at Tantallon stay,  
Requiem for Cochran's soul may say."  
And with the slaughtered favorite's name

Across the monarch's brow there came  
A cloud of ire, remorse, and shame.

## XVI

In answer nought could Angus speak,  
His proud heart swelled well-nigh to break ;  
He turned aside, and down his cheek 45<sup>o</sup>  
A burning tear there stole.

His hand the monarch sudden took,  
That sight his kind heart could not brook :

“ Now, by the Bruce's soul,  
Angus, my hasty speech forgive !  
For sure as doth his spirit live,  
As he said of the Douglas old,

I well may say of you, —  
That never king did subject hold,  
In speech more free, in war more bold, 46<sup>o</sup>  
More tender and more true ;

Forgive me, Douglas, once again.” —  
And, while the king his hand did strain,  
The old man's tears fell down like rain.

To seize the moment Marmion tried,  
And whispered to the king aside :  
“ Oh ! let such tears unwonted plead  
For respite short from dubious deed !  
A child will weep a bramble's smart,  
A maid to see her sparrow part, 47<sup>o</sup>  
A stripling for a woman's heart ;  
But woe awaits a country when  
She sees the tears of bearded men.  
Then, oh ! what omen, dark and high,  
When Douglas wets his manly eye !”



## XVII

Displeas'd was James that stranger view'd  
And tamper'd with his changing mood.  
"Laugh those that can, weep those that may,"  
Thus did the fiery monarch say,  
"Southward I march by break of day; 480  
And if within Tantallon strong  
The good Lord Marmion tarries long,  
Perchance our meeting next may fall  
At Tamworth in his castle-hall." —  
The haughty Marmion felt the taunt,  
And answer'd grave the royal vaunt:  
"Much honored were my humble home,  
If in its halls King James should come;  
But Nottingham has archers good,  
And Yorkshire men are stern of mood, 490  
Northumbrian prickers wild and rude.  
On Derby Hills the paths are steep,  
In Ouse and Tyne the fords are deep;  
And many a banner will be torn,  
And many a knight to earth be borne,  
And many a sheaf of arrows spent,  
Ere Scotland's king shall cross the Trent:  
Yet pause, brave prince, while yet you may!" —  
The monarch lightly turned away,  
And to his nobles loud did call, 500  
"Lords, to the dance, — a hall! a hall!"  
Himself his cloak and sword flung by,  
And led Dame Heron gallantly;  
And minstrels, at the royal order,  
Rung out "Blue Bonnets o'er the Border."

## XVIII

Leave we these revels now to tell  
 What to Saint Hilda's maids befell,  
 Whose galley, as they sailed again  
 To Whitby, by a Scot was ta'en.  
 Now at Dun-Edin did they bide  
 Till James should of their fate decide,

510

And soon by his command  
 Were gently summoned to prepare  
 To journey under Marmion's care,  
 As escort honored, safe, and fair,  
 Again to English land.

The abbess told her chaplet o'er,  
 Nor knew which Saint she should implore ;  
 For, when she thought of Constance, sore  
 She feared Lord Marmion's mood.

520

And judge what Clara must have felt !  
 The sword that hung in Marmion's belt  
 Had drunk De Wilton's blood.

Unwittingly King James had given,  
 As guard to Whitby's shades,  
 The man most dreaded under heaven  
 By these defenceless maids ;

Yet what petition could avail,  
 Or who would listen to the tale  
 Of woman, prisoner, and nun,  
 'Mid bustle of a war begun ?

530

They deemed it hopeless to avoid  
 The convoy of their dangerous guide.

## XIX

Their lodging, so the king assigned,  
 To Marmion's, as their guardian, joined ;

And thus it fell that, passing nigh,  
The Palmer caught the abbess's eye,  
Who warned him by a scroll  
She had a secret to reveal  
That much concerned the Church's weal 540  
And health of sinner's soul ;  
And, with deep charge of secrecy,  
She named a place to meet  
Within an open balcony,  
That hung from dizzy pitch and high  
Above the stately street,  
To which, as common to each home,  
At night they might in secret come.

## XX

At night in secret there they came,  
The Palmer and the holy dame. 550  
The moon among the clouds rode high,  
And all the city hum was by.  
Upon the street, where late before  
Did din of war and warriors roar,  
You might have heard a pebble fall,  
A beetle hum, a cricket sing,  
An owlet flap his boding wing  
On Giles's steeple tall.  
The antique buildings, climbing high,  
Whose Gothic frontlets sought the sky, 560  
Were here wrapt deep in shade ;  
There on their brows the moonbeams broke  
Through the faint wreaths of silvery smoke,  
And on the casements played.  
And other light was none to see,  
Save torches gliding far,

Before some chieftain of degree  
 Who left the royal revelry  
 To bowne him for the war. —  
 A solemn scene the abbess chose,  
 A solemn hour, her secret to disclose.

570

## XXI

“O holy Palmer!” she began, —  
 “For sure he must be sainted man,  
 Whose blessed feet have trod the ground  
 Where the Redeemer’s tomb is found, —  
 For his dear Church’s sake, my tale  
 Attend, nor deem of light avail,  
 Though I must speak of worldly love, —  
 How vain to those who wed above! —  
 De Wilton and Lord Marmion wooed  
 Clara de Clare, of Gloster’s blood; —  
 Idle it were of Whitby’s dame  
 To say of that same blood I came; —  
 And once, when jealous rage was high,  
 Lord Marmion said despiteously,  
 Wilton was traitor in his heart,  
 And had made league with Martin Swart  
 When he came here on Simnel’s part,  
 And only cowardice did restrain  
 His rebel aid on Stokefield’s plain, —  
 And down he threw his glove. The thing  
 Was tried, as wont, before the king;  
 Where frankly did De Wilton own  
 That Swart in Guelders he had known,  
 And that between them then there went  
 Some scroll of courteous compliment.  
 For this he to his castle sent;

580

590

But when his messenger returned,  
 Judge how De Wilton's fury burned!  
 For in his packet there were laid 600  
 Letters that claimed disloyal aid  
 And proved King Henry's cause betrayed.  
 His fame, thus blighted, in the field  
 He strove to clear by spear and shield;—  
 To clear his fame in vain he strove,  
 For wondrous are His ways above!  
 Perchance some form was unobserved,  
 Perchance in prayer or faith he swerved,  
 Else how could guiltless champion quail,  
 Or how the blessed ordeal fail? 610

## XXII

"His squire, who now De Wilton saw  
 As recreant doomed to suffer law,  
     Repentant, owned in vain  
 That while he had the scrolls in care  
 A stranger maiden,<sup>o</sup> passing fair,  
 Had drenched him with a beverage rare;  
     His words no faith could gain.  
 With Clare alone he credence won,  
 Who, rather than wed Marmion,  
 Did to Saint Hilda's shrine repair, 620  
 To give our house her livings fair  
 And die a vestal votaress there.  
 The impulse from the earth was given,  
 But bent her to the paths of heaven.  
 A purer heart, a lovelier maid,  
 Ne'er sheltered her in Whitby's shade,  
 No, not since Saxon Edelfied;  
 Only one trace of earthly stain,



That for her lover's loss  
 She cherishes a sorrow vain, 63c  
 And murmurs at the cross. —  
 And then her heritage: — it goes  
 Along the banks of Tame;  
 Deep fields of grain the reaper mows,  
 In meadows rich the heifer lows,  
 The falconer and huntsman knows  
 Its woodlands for the game.  
 Shame were it to Saint Hilda dear,  
 And I, her humble votaress here,  
 Should do a deadly sin, 64-  
 Her temple spoiled before mine eyes,  
 If this false Marmion such a prize  
 By my consent should win;  
 Yet hath our boisterous monarch sworn  
 That Clare shall from our house be torn,  
 And grievous cause have I to fear  
 Such mandate doth Lord Marmion bear.

## XXIII

“Now, prisoner, helpless, and betrayed  
 To evil power, I claim thine aid,  
 By every step that thou hast trod 65c  
 To holy shrine and grotto dim,  
 By every martyr's tortured limb,  
 By angel, saint, and seraphim,  
 And by the Church of God!  
 For mark: when Wilton was betrayed,  
 And with his squire forged letters laid,  
 She was, alas! that sinful maid  
 By whom the deed was done, —  
 Oh! shame and horror to be said!

She was — a perjured nun !  
 No clerk in all the land like her  
 Traced quaint and varying character.  
 Perchance you may a marvel deem,  
 That Marmion's paramour —  
 For such vile thing she was — should scheme  
 Her lover's nuptial hour ;  
 But o'er him thus she hoped to gain,  
 As privy to his honor's stain,  
 Illimitable power.  
 For this she secretly retained  
 Each proof that might the plot reveal,  
 Instructions with his hand and seal ;  
 And thus Saint Hilda deigned,  
 Through sinners' perfidy impure,  
 Her house's glory to secure  
 And Clare's immortal weal.

660

670

## XXIV

" 'T were long and needless here to tell  
 How to my hand these papers fell° ;  
 With me they must not stay.  
 Saint Hilda keep her abbess true !  
 Who knows what outrage he might do  
 While journeying by the way ? —  
 O blessed Saint, if e'er again  
 I venturous leave thy calm domain,  
 To travel or by land or main,  
 Deep penance may I pay ! —  
 Now, saintly Palmer, mark my prayer :  
 I give this packet to thy care,  
 For thee to stop they will not dare ;  
 And oh ! with cautious speed

680

690

To Wolsey's hand the papers bring,  
 That he may show them to the king:  
 And for thy well-earned mead,  
 Thou holy man, at Whitby's shrine  
 A weekly mass shall still be thine  
 While priests can sing and read. —  
 What ail'st thou? — Speak!" — For as he took  
 The charge a strong emotion shook  
 His frame, and ere reply  
 They heard a faint yet shrilly tone, 700  
 Like distant clarion feebly blown,  
 That on the breeze did die;  
 And loud the abbess shrieked in fear,  
 "Saint Withold, save us! — What is here!  
 Look at yon City Cross!  
 See on its battled tower appear  
 Phantoms, that scutcheons seem to rear  
 And blazoned banners toss!" —

## XXV

Dun-Edin's Cross, a pillared stone,  
 Rose on a turret octagon; — 710  
 But now is razed that monument,  
 Whence royal edict rang,  
 And voice of Scotland's law was sent  
 In glorious trumpet-clang.  
 Oh! be his tomb as lead to lead  
 Upon its dull destroyer's head! —  
 A minstrel's malison is said. —  
 Then on its battlements they saw  
 A vision, passing Nature's law,  
 Strange, wild, and dimly seen; 720  
 Figures that seemed to rise and die,

Gibber and sign, advance and fly,  
 While nought confirmed could ear or eye  
     Discern of sound or mien.  
 Yet darkly did it seem as there  
 Heralds and pursuivants prepare,  
 With trumpet sound and blazon fair,  
     A summons to proclaim;  
 But indistinct the pageant proud,  
 As fancy forms of midnight cloud  
 When flings the moon upon her shroud  
     A wavering tinge of flame;  
 It flits, expands, and shifts, till loud,  
 From midmost of the spectre crowd,  
     This awful summons came<sup>o</sup>: —

73<sup>o</sup>

## XXVI

“Prince, prelate, potentate, and peer,  
     Whose names I now shall call,  
 Scottish or foreigner, give ear!  
 Subjects of him who sent me here,  
 At his tribunal to appear  
     I summon one and all:  
 I cite you by each deadly sin  
 That e’er hath soiled your hearts within;  
 I cite you by each brutal lust  
 That e’er defiled your earthly dust, —  
     By wrath, by pride, by fear,  
 By each o’ermastering passion’s tone,  
 By the dark grave and dying groan!  
 When forty days are passed and gone,  
 I cite you, at your monarch’s throne  
     To answer and appear.” —  
 Then thundered forth a roll of names: —

74<sup>o</sup>75<sup>o</sup>

The first was thine, unhappy James!  
 Then all thy nobles came;  
 Crawford, Glencairn, Montrose, Argyle,  
 Ross, Bothwell, Forbes, Lennox, Lyle, —  
 Why should I tell their separate style?  
 Each chief of birth and fame,  
 Of Lowland, Highland, Border, Isle,  
 Foredoomed to Flodden's carnage pile, 760  
 Was cited there by name;  
 And Marmion, Lord of Fontenaye,  
 Of Lutterward, and Scrivelbaye;  
 De Wilton, erst of Aberley,  
 The self-same thundering voice did say. —  
 But then another spoke°:  
 "Thy fatal summons I deny  
 And thine infernal lord defy,  
 Appealing me to Him on high  
 Who burst the sinner's yoke." 770  
 At that dread accent, with a scream,  
 Parted the pageant like a dream,  
 The summoner was gone.  
 Prone on her face the abbess fell,  
 And fast, and fast, her beads did tell;  
 Her nuns came, startled by the yell,  
 And found her there alone.  
 She marked not, at the scene aghast,  
 What time or how the Palmer passed.

## XXVII

Shift we the scene. — The camp doth move; 780  
 Dun-Edin's streets are empty now,  
 Save when, for weal of those they love,  
 To pray the prayer and vow the vow,



The tottering child, the anxious fair,  
 The gray-haired sire, with pious care,  
 To chapels and to shrines repair. —  
 Where is the Palmer now? and where  
 The abbess, Marmion, and Clare? —  
 Bold Douglas! to Tantallon fair

They journey in thy charge:

790

Lord Marmion rode on his right hand,  
 The Palmer still was with the band;  
 Angus, like Lindesay, did command  
 That none should roam at large.  
 But in that Palmer's altered mien  
 A wondrous change might now be seen;  
 Freely he spoke of war,

Of marvels wrought by single hand  
 When lifted for a native land,  
 And still looked high, as if he planned  
 Some desperate deed afar.

800

His courser would he feed and stroke,  
 And, tucking up his sable frock,  
 Would first his mettle bold provoke,  
 Then soothe or quell his pride.

Old Hubert said that never one  
 He saw, except Lord Marmion,  
 A steed so fairly ride.

## XXVIII

Some half hour's march behind there came,  
 By Eustace governed fair,  
 A troop escorting Hilda's dame,  
 With all her nuns and Clare.  
 No audience had Lord Marmion sought;  
 Ever he feared to aggravate

810

Clara de Clare's suspicious hate;  
 And safer 't was, he thought,  
     To wait till, from the nuns removed,  
     The influence of kinsmen loved,  
     And suit by Henry's self approved,  
 Her slow consent had wrought. 82c  
     His was no flickering flame, that dies  
     Unless when fanned by looks and sighs  
     And lighted oft at lady's eyes;  
 He longed to stretch his wide command  
 O'er luckless Clara's ample land:  
 Besides, when Wilton with him vied,  
 Although the pang of humbled pride  
 The place of jealousy<sup>o</sup> supplied,  
 Yet conquest, by that meanness won  
 He almost loathed to think upon, 83c  
 Led him, at times, to hate the cause  
 Which made him burst through honor's laws.  
 If e'er he loved, 't was her alone  
 Who died within that vault of stone.

## XXIX

And now, when close at hand they saw  
 North Berwick's town and lofty Law,  
 Fitz-Eustace bade them pause awhile  
 Before a venerable pile  
     Whose turrets viewed afar  
 The lofty Bass, the Lambie Isle, 84c  
     The ocean's peace or war.  
 At tolling of a bell, forth came  
 The convent's venerable dame,  
 And prayed Saint Hilda's abness rest  
 With her, a loved and honored guest,

Till Douglas should a bark prepare  
 To waft her back to Whitby fair.  
 Glad was the abbess, you may guess,  
 And thanked the Scottish prioress ;  
 And tedious were to tell, I ween, 850  
 The courteous speech that passed between.

O'erjoyed the nuns their palfreys leave ;  
 But when fair Clara did intend,  
 Like them, from horseback to descend,  
 Fitz-Eustace said : " I grieve,  
 Fair lady, grieve e'en from my heart,  
 Such gentle company to part ; —

Think not discourtesy,  
 But lords' commands must be obeyed,  
 And Marmion and the Douglas said 860  
 That you must wend with me.

Lord Marmion hath a letter broad,  
 Which to the Scottish earl he showed,  
 Commanding that beneath his care  
 Without delay you shall repair  
 To your good kinsman, Lord Fitz-Clare."

## XXX

The startled abbess loud exclaimed ;  
 But she at whom the blow was aimed  
 Grew pale as death and cold as lead, —  
 She deemed she heard her death-doom read. 870  
 " Cheer thee, my child ! " the abbess said,  
 " They dare not tear thee from my hand,  
 To ride alone with armed band." —

" Nay, holy mother, nay,"  
 Fitz-Eustace said, " the lovely Clare  
 Will be in Lady Angus's care,  
 In Scotland while we stay ;

And when we move an easy ride  
 Will bring us to the English side,  
 Female attendance to provide 88c  
     Befitting Gloster's heir ;  
 Nor thinks nor dreams my noble lord,  
 By slightest look, or act, or word,  
     To harass Lady Clare.  
 Her faithful guardian he will be,  
 Nor sue for slightest courtesy  
     That e'en to stranger falls,  
 Till he shall place her safe and free  
     Within her kinsman's halls."  
 He spoke, and blushed with earnest grace , 89o  
 His faith was painted on his face,  
     And Clare's worst fear relieved.  
 The Lady Abbess loud exclaimed  
 On Henry, and the Douglas blamed,  
     Entreated, threatened, grieved,  
 To martyr, saint, and prophet prayed,  
 Against Lord Marmion inveighed,  
 And called the prioress to aid,  
 To curse with candle, bell, and book.  
 Her head the grave Cistertian shook : 90o  
 "The Douglas and the king," she said,  
 "In their commands will be obeyed ;  
 Grieve not, nor dream that harm can fall  
 The maiden in Tantallon Hall."

## XXXI

The abbess, seeing strife was vain,  
 Assumed her wonted state again, —  
     For much of state she had, —  
 Composed her veil, and raised her head.

And "Bid," in solemn voice she said,  
 "Thy master, bold and bad,  
 The records of his house turn o'er,  
 And, when he shall there written see  
 That one of his own ancestry  
 Drove the monks forth of Coventry,  
 Bid him his fate explore!

910

Prancing in pride of earthly trust,  
 His charger hurled him to the dust,  
 And, by a base plebeian thrust,  
 He died his band before.

God judge 'twixt Marmion and me;  
 He is a chief of high degree,

920

And I a poor recluse,  
 Yet oft in holy writ we see  
 Even such weak minister as me

May the oppressor bruise;  
 For thus, inspired, did Judith slay  
 The mighty in his sin,

And Jael thus, and Deborah" —

Here hasty Blount broke in:  
 "Fitz-Eustace, we must march our band;  
 Saint Anton fire thee! wilt thou stand  
 All day, with bonnet in thy hand,  
 To hear the lady preach?"

930

By this good light! if thus we stay,  
 Lord Marmion for our fond delay  
 Will sharper sermon teach.

Come, don thy cap and mount thy horse;  
 The dame must patience take perforce."

## XXXII

"Submit we then to force," said Clare,  
 "But let this barbarous lord despair

940



His purposed aim to win ;  
 Let him take living, land, and life,  
 But to be Marmion's wedded wife

In me were deadly sin :  
 And if it be the king's decree  
 That I must find no sanctuary  
 In that inviolable dome  
 Where even a homicide might come  
 And safely rest his head,  
 Though at its open portals stood, 950  
 Thirsting to pour forth blood for blood,

The kinsmen of the dead,  
 Yet one asylum is my own  
 Against the dreaded hour, —  
 A low, a silent, and a lone,  
 Where kings have little power.

One victim is before me there. —  
 Mother, your blessing, and in prayer  
 Remember your unhappy Clare !”

Loud weeps the abbess, and bestows 960  
 Kind blessings many a one ;

Weeping and wailing loud arose,  
 Round patient Clare, the clamorous woes  
 Of every simple nun.

His eyes the gentle Eustace dried,  
 And scarce rude Blount the sight could bide.

Then took the squire her rein,  
 And gently led away her steed,  
 And by each courteous word and deed  
 To cheer her strove in vain. 970

## XXXIII

But scant three miles the band had rode,  
 When o'er a height they passed,

And, sudden, close before them showed  
 His towers Tantallon vast,  
 Broad, massive, high, and stretching far,  
 And held impregnable in war.  
 On a projecting rock they rose,  
 And round three sides the ocean flows,  
 The fourth did battled walls enclose  
 And double mound and fosse. 980  
 By narrow drawbridge, outworks strong,  
 Through studded gates, an entrance long,  
 To the main court they cross.  
 It was a wide and stately square;  
 Around were lodgings fit and fair,  
 And towers of various form,  
 Which on the court projected far  
 And broke its lines quadrangular.  
 Here was square keep, there turret high,  
 Or pinnacle that sought the sky, 990  
 Whence oft the warder could descry  
 The gathering ocean-storm.

## XXXIV

Here did they rest. — The princely care  
 Of Douglas why should I declare,  
 Or say they met reception fair?  
 Or why the tidings say,  
 Which varying to Tantallon came,  
 By hurrying posts or fleeter fame,  
 With every varying day?  
 And, first, they heard King James had won 1000  
 Etall, and Wark, and Ford; and then,  
 That Norham Castle strong was ta'en.  
 At that sore marvelled Marmion,

And Douglas hoped his monarch's hand  
Would soon subdue Northumberland;

But whispered news there came,  
That while his host inactive lay,  
And melted by degrees away,  
King James was dallying off the day  
With Heron's wily dame.

1010

Such acts to chronicles I yield;

Go seek them there and see:  
Mine is a tale of Flodden Field,

And not a history. —

At length they heard the Scottish host  
On that high ridge had made their post

Which frowns o'er Millfield Plain;  
And that brave Surrey many a band  
Had gathered in the Southern land,  
And marched into Northumberland,

1020

And camp at Wooler ta'en.

Marmion, like charger in the stall,  
That hears, without, the trumpet-call,

Began to chafe and swear: —

“A sorry thing to hide my head  
In castle, like a fearful maid,

When such a field is near.

Needs must I see this battle-day;

Death to my fame if such a fray

Were fought, and Marmion away!

1030

The Douglas, too, I wot not why,

Hath bated of his courtesy;

No longer in his halls I'll stay;”

Then bade his band they should array  
For march against the dawning day.

## INTRODUCTION TO CANTO SIXTH

TO RICHARD HEBER,° ESQ.

*Mertoun House, Christmas.*

HEAP on more wood! — the wind is chill;  
But let it whistle as it will,  
We'll keep our Christmas merry still.  
Each age has deemed the new-born year  
The fittest time for festal cheer:  
Even, heathen yet, the savage Dane  
At Iol° more deep the mead did drain,  
High on the beach his galleys drew,  
And feasted all his pirate crew;  
Then in his low and pine-built hall, 10  
Where shields and axes decked the wall,  
They gorged upon the half-dressed steer,  
Caroused in seas of sable beer,  
While round in brutal jest were thrown  
The half-gnawed rib and marrowbone,  
Or listened all in grim delight  
While scalds yelled out the joys of fight.  
Then forth in frenzy would they hie,  
While wildly loose their red locks fly, 20  
And dancing round the blazing pile,  
They make such barbarous mirth the while  
As best might to the mind recall  
The boisterous joys of Odin's hall.

And well our Christian sires of old  
Loved when the year its course had rolled,  
And brought blithe Christmas back again  
With all his hospitable train.

Domestic and religious rite  
Gave honor to the holy night ;  
On Christmas eve the bells were rung, 30  
On Christmas eve the mass was sung :  
That only night in all the year  
Saw the stoled priest the chalice rear.  
The damsel donned her kirtle sheen ;  
The hall was dressed with holly green ;  
Forth to the wood did merry men go,  
To gather in the misletoe.

Then opened wide the baron's hall  
To vassal, tenant, serf, and all ;  
Power laid his rod of rule aside, 40  
And Ceremony doffed his pride.  
The heir, with roses in his shoes,  
That night might village partner choose ;  
The lord, underogating, share  
The vulgar game of " post and pair. °"  
All hailed, with uncontrolled delight  
And general voice, the happy night  
That to the cottage, as the crown,  
Brought tidings of salvation down.

The fire, with well-dried logs supplied, 50  
Went roaring up the chimney wide ;  
The huge hall-table's oaken face,  
Scrubbed till it shone, the day to grace,  
Bore then upon its massive board  
No mark to part the squire and lord. °  
Then was brought in the lusty brawn



By old blue-coated serving-man ;  
Then the grim boar's-head frowned on high,  
Crested with bays and rosemary.  
Well can the green-garbed ranger tell, 60  
How, when, and where, the monster fell,  
What dogs before his death he tore,  
And all the baiting of the boar.  
The wassail round, in good brown bowls  
Garnished with ribbons, blithely trowls.  
There the huge sirloin reeked ; hard by  
Plum-porridge stood and Christmas pie ;  
Nor failed old Scotland to produce  
At such high tide her savory goose.  
Then came the merry maskers in, 70  
And carols roared with blithesome din ;  
If unmelodious was the song,  
It was a hearty note and strong.  
Who lists may in their mumming see  
Traces of ancient mystery ;  
White shirts supplied the masquerade,  
And smutted cheeks the visors made ;  
But oh ! what maskers, richly dight,  
Can boast of bosoms half so light !  
England was merry England when 80  
Old Christmas brought his sports again.  
'T was Christmas broached the mightiest ale,  
'T was Christmas told the merriest tale ;  
A Christmas gambol oft could cheer  
The poor man's heart through half the year.

Still linger in our northern clime  
Some remnants of the good old time,  
And still within our valleys here  
We hold the kindred title dear,

Even when, perchance, its far-fetched claim                   90  
 To Southron ear sounds empty name;  
 For course of blood, our proverbs deem,  
 Is warmer than the mountain-stream.  
 And thus my Christmas still I hold  
 Where my great-grandsire<sup>o</sup> came of old,  
 With amber beard and flaxen hair  
 And reverend apostolic air,  
 The feast and holy-tide to share,  
 And mix sobriety with wine,  
 And honest mirth with thoughts divine:                   100  
 Small thought was his, in after time  
 E'er to be hitched into a rhyme.  
 The simple sire could only boast  
 That he was loyal to his cost,  
 The banished race of kings revered,  
 And lost his land, — but kept his beard.

In these dear halls, where welcome kind  
 Is with fair liberty combined,  
 Where cordial friendship gives the hand,  
 And flies constraint the magic wand                   110  
 Of the fair dame that rules the land,  
 Little we heed the tempest drear,  
 While music, mirth, and social cheer  
 Speed on their wings the passing year.  
 And Mertoun's halls are fair e'en now,  
 When not a leaf is on the bough.  
 Tweed loves them well, and turns again,  
 As loath to leave the sweet domain,  
 And holds his mirror to her face,  
 And clips her with a close embrace: —                   120  
 Gladly as he we seek the dome,  
 And as reluctant turn us home.

How just that at this time of glee  
 My thoughts should, Heber, turn to thee!  
 For many a merry hour we 've known,  
 And heard the chimes of midnight's tone.  
 Cease, then, my friend! a moment cease,  
 And leave these classic tomes in peace!  
 Of Roman and of Grecian lore  
 Sure mortal brain can hold no more. 130  
 These ancients, as Noll Bluff might say,  
 "Were pretty fellows in their day,"  
 But time and tide o'er all prevail —  
 On Christmas eve a Christmas tale —  
 Of wonder and of war — "Profane!  
 What! leave the lofty Latian strain,  
 Her stately prose, her verse's charms,  
 To hear the clash of rusty arms;  
 In Fairy-land or Limbo lost,  
 To jostle conjurer and ghost, 140  
 Goblin and witch!" — Nay, Heber dear,  
 Before you touch my charter, hear;  
 Though Leyden aids, alas! no more,  
 My cause with many-languaged lore,  
 This may I say: — in realms of death  
 Ulysses meets Alcides' *wraith*,  
 Æneas upon Thracia's shore  
 The ghost of murdered Polydore;  
 For omens, we in Livy cross  
 At every turn *locutus Bos*.<sup>o</sup> 150  
 As grave and duly speaks that ox  
 As if he told the price of stocks,  
 Or held in Rome republican  
 The place of Common-councilman.

All nations have their omens drear,  
 Their legends wild of woe and fear.  
 To Cambria look — the peasant see  
 Bethink him of Glendowerdy  
 And shun “the Spirit’s Blasted Tree.” —  
 The Highlander, whose red claymore :6c  
 The battle turned on Maida’s shore,  
 Will on a Friday morn look pale,  
 If asked to tell a fairy tale :  
 He fears the vengeful Elfin King,  
 Who leaves that day his grassy ring ;  
 Invisible to human ken,  
 He walks among the sons of men.

Didst e’er, dear Heber, pass along  
 Beneath the towers of Franchémont,  
 Which, like an eagle’s nest in air, 170  
 Hang o’er the stream and hamlet fair ?  
 Deep in their vaults, the peasants say,  
 A mighty treasure buried lay,  
 Amassed through rapine and through wrong  
 By the last Lord of Franchémont.  
 The iron chest is bolted hard,  
 A huntsman sits its constant guard ;  
 Around his neck his horn is hung,  
 His hanger in his belt is slung ;  
 Before his feet his bloodhounds lie : 180  
 An ’t were not for his gloomy eye,  
 Whose withering glance no heart can brook,  
 As true a huntsman doth he look  
 As bugle e’er in brake did sound,  
 Or ever halooed to a hound.  
 To chase the fiend and win the prize  
 In that same dungeon ever tries

An aged necromantic priest ;  
 It is an hundred years at least  
 Since 'twixt them first the strife begun, 190  
 And neither yet has lost nor won.  
 And oft the conjurer's words will make  
 The stubborn demon groan and quake ;  
 And oft the bands of iron break,  
 Or bursts one lock that still amain,  
 Fast as 't is opened, shuts again.  
 That magic strife within the tomb  
 May last until the day of doom,  
 Unless the adept shall learn to tell  
 The very word that clenched the spell 205  
 When Franch'mont locked the treasure cell.  
 An hundred years are passed and gone,  
 And scarce three letters has he won.

Such general superstition may  
 Excuse for old Pitscottie say,  
 Whose gossip history has given  
 My song the messenger from heaven  
 That warned, in Lithgow, Scotland's king,  
 Nor less the infernal summoning ;  
 May pass the monk of Durham's tale, 210  
 Whose demon fought in Gothic mail ;  
 May pardon plead for Fordun grave,  
 Who told of Gifford's Goblin-Cave.  
 But why such instances to you,  
 Who in an instant can renew  
 Your treasured hoards of various lore,  
 And furnish twenty thousand more ?  
 Hoards, not like theirs whose volumes rest  
 Like treasures in the Franch'mont chest,  
 While grapple owners still refuse 220



To others what they cannot use ;  
Give them the priest's whole century,  
They shall not spell you letters three, —  
Their pleasure in the books the same  
The magpie takes in pilfered gem.  
Thy volumes, open as thy heart,  
Delight, amusement, science, art,  
To every ear and eye impart ;  
Yet who, of all who thus employ them,  
Can like the owner's self enjoy them ? —  
But, hark ! I hear the distant drum !  
The day of Flodden Field is come, —  
Adieu, dear Heber ! life and health,  
And store of literary wealth.

## CANTO SIXTH

### THE BATTLE

#### I

WHILE great events were on the gale,  
And each hour brought a varying tale,  
And the demeanor, changed and cold,  
Of Douglas fretted Marmion bold,  
And, like the impatient steed of war,  
He snuffed the battle from afar,  
And hopes were none that back again  
Herald should come from Terouenne,<sup>o</sup>  
Where England's king in leaguer lay,  
Before decisive battle-day, —

While these things were, the mournful Clare  
Did in the dame's devotions share ;  
For the good countess ceaseless prayed  
To Heaven and saints her sons to aid,  
And with short interval did pass  
From prayer to book, from book to mass,  
And all in high baronial pride, —  
A life both dull and dignified :  
Yet, as Lord Marmion nothing pressed  
Upon her intervals of rest,

Dejected Clara well could bear  
The formal state, the lengthened prayer,  
Though dearest to her wounded heart  
The hours that she might spend apart.

## II

I said Tantallon's dizzy steep  
Hung o'er the margin of the deep.  
Many a rude tower and rampart there  
Repelled the insult of the air,  
Which, when the tempest vexed the sky,  
Half breeze, half spray, came whistling by. 30  
Above the rest a turret square  
Did o'er its Gothic entrance bear,  
Of sculpture rude, a stony shield;  
The Bloody Heart<sup>o</sup> was in the field,  
And in the chief three mullets stood,  
The cognizance of Douglas blood.  
The turret held a narrow stair,  
Which, mounted, gave you access where  
A parapet's embattled row  
Did seaward round the castle go. 40  
Sometimes in dizzy steps descending,  
Sometimes in narrow circuit bending,  
Sometimes in platform broad extending,  
Its varying circle did combine  
Bulwark, and bartizan, and line,  
And bastion, tower, and vantage-coign.  
Above the booming ocean leant  
The far-projecting battlement;  
The billows burst in ceaseless flow  
Upon the precipice below. 50  
Where'er Tantallon faced the land,  
Gate-works and walls were strongly manned;  
No need upon the sea-girt side:  
The steepy rock and frantic tide  
Approach of human step denied,

And thus these lines and ramparts rude  
Were left in deepest solitude.

## III

And, for they were so lonely, Clare  
Would to these battlements repair,  
And muse upon her sorrows there, 60  
    And list the sea-bird's cry,  
Or slow, like noontide ghost, would glide  
Along the dark-gray bulwarks' side,  
And ever on the heaving tide  
    Look down with weary eye.  
Oft did the cliff and swelling main  
Recall the thoughts of Whitby's fane, —  
A home she ne'er might see again ;  
    For she had laid adown,  
So Douglas bade, the hood and veil, 70  
And frontlet of the cloister pale,  
    And Benedictine gown :  
It were unseemly sight, he said,  
A novice out of convent shade. —  
Now her bright locks with sunny glow  
Again adorned her brow of snow ;  
Her mantle rich, whose borders round  
A deep and fretted broidery bound,  
In golden foldings sought the ground ;  
Of holy ornament, alone 80  
Remained a cross with ruby stone ;  
    And often did she look  
On that which in her hand she bore,  
With velvet bound and broidered o'er,  
    Her breviary book.  
In such a place, so lone, so grim,

At dawning pale or twilight dim,  
 It fearful would have been  
 To meet a form so richly dressed,  
 With book in hand, and cross on breast,  
 And such a woful mien.  
 Fitz-Eustace, loitering with his bow,  
 To practise on the gull and crow,  
 Saw her at distance gliding slow,  
 And did by Mary swear  
 Some lovelorn fay she might have been,  
 Or in romance some spell-bound queen,  
 For ne'er in work-day world was seen  
 A form so witching fair.

99

## IV

Once walking thus at evening tide  
 It chanced a gliding sail she spied,  
 And sighing thought — “The abbess there  
 Perchance does to her home repair;  
 Her peaceful rule, where Duty free  
 Walks hand in hand with Charity,  
 Where oft Devotion's tranced glow  
 Can such a glimpse of heaven bestow  
 That the enraptured sisters see  
 High vision and deep mystery, —  
 The very form of Hilda fair,  
 Hovering upon the sunny air  
 And smiling on her votaries' prayer.  
 Oh! wherefore to my duller eye  
 Did still the Saint her form deny?  
 Was it that, seared by sinful scorn,  
 My heart could neither melt nor burn?  
 Or lie my warm affections low

100

110



With him that taught them first to glow?  
Yet, gentle abness, well I knew  
To pay thy kindness grateful due, 120  
And well could brook the mild command  
That ruled thy simple maiden band.  
How different now, condemned to bide  
My doom from this dark tyrant's pride! —  
But Marmion has to learn ere long  
That constant mind and hate of wrong  
Descended to a feeble girl  
From Red de Clare, stout Gloster's Earl:  
Of such a stem a sapling weak,  
He ne'er shall bend, although he break. 130

## V

“But see! — what makes this armor here?” —  
For in her path there lay  
Targe, corselet, helm; — she viewed them near. —  
“The breastplate pierced! — Ay, much I fear,  
Weak fence wert thou 'gainst foeman's spear,  
That hath made fatal entrance here,  
As these dark blood-gouts say. —  
Thus Wilton! — Oh! not corselet's ward,  
Not truth, as diamond pure and hard,  
Could be thy manly bosom's guard 140  
On yon disastrous day!” —  
She raised her eyes in mournful mood, —  
Wilton himself before her stood!  
It might have seemed his passing ghost,  
For every youthful grace was lost,  
And joy unwonted and surprise  
Gave their strange wildness to his eyes. —  
Expect not, noble dames and lords,

That I can tell such scene in words :  
 What skilful linner e'er would choose 150  
 To paint the rainbow's varying hues,  
 Unless to mortal it were given  
 To dip his brush in dyes of heaven?  
 Far less can my weak line declare  
 Each changing passion's shade :  
 Brightening to rapture from despair,  
 Sorrow, surprise, and pity there,  
 And joy with her angelic air,  
 And hope that paints the future fair,  
 Their varying hues displayed ; 160  
 Each o'er its rival's ground extending,  
 Alternate conquering, shifting, blending,  
 Till all fatigued the conflict yield,  
 And mighty love retains the field.  
 Shortly I tell what then he said,  
 By many a tender word delayed,  
 And modest blush, and bursting sigh,  
 And question kind, and fond reply : —

## VI

## DE WILTON'S HISTORY

" Forget we that disastrous day  
 When senseless in the lists I lay. 170  
 Thence dragged, — but how I cannot know,  
 For sense and recollection fled, —  
 I found me on a pallet low  
 Within my ancient beadsman's shed.  
 Austin, — remember'st thou, my Clare,  
 How thou didst blush when the old man,  
 When first our infant love began,  
 Said we would make a matchless pair? --

Menials and friends and kinsmen fled  
From the degraded traitor's bed, — 18c  
He only held my burning head,  
And tended me for many a day  
While wounds and fever held their sway.  
But far more needful was his care  
When sense returned to wake despair;  
    For I did tear the closing wound,  
    And dash me frantic on the ground,  
If e'er I heard the name of Clare.  
At length, to calmer reason brought,  
Mucā by his kind attendance wrought, 19c  
    With him I left my native strand,  
And, in a palmer's weeds arrayed,  
My hated name and form to shade,  
    I journeyed many a land,  
No more a lord of rank and birth,  
But mingled with the dregs of earth.  
Oft Austin for my reason feared,  
When I would sit, and deeply brood  
On dark revenge and deeds of blood,  
    Or wild mad schemes upreared. 20c  
My friend at length fell sick, and said  
    God would remove him soon;  
And while upon his dying bed  
    He begged of me a boon —  
If e'er my deadliest enemy  
Beneath my brand should conquered lie,  
Even then my mercy should awake  
And spare his life for Austin's sake.

## VII

“Still restless as a second Cain,  
To Scotland next my route was ta'en, 21c

Full well the paths I knew.  
 Fame of my fate made various sound,  
 That death in pilgrimage I found,  
 That I had perished of my wound, —  
 None cared which tale was true;  
 And living eye could never guess  
 De Wilton in his palmer's dress,  
 For now that sable slough is shed,  
 And trimmed my shaggy beard and head,  
 I scarcely know me in the glass.

22c

A chance most wondrous did provide  
 That I should be that baron's guide —

I will not name his name! —  
 Vengeance to God alone belongs;  
 But, when I think on all my wrongs,

My blood is liquid flame!  
 And ne'er the time shall I forget  
 When, in a Scottish hostel° set,

Dark looks we did exchange:  
 What were his thoughts I cannot tell,  
 But in my bosom mustered Hell  
 Its plans of dark revenge.

23c

## VIII

“A word of vulgar augury°  
 That broke from me, I scarce knew why.

Brought on a village tale,  
 Which wrought upon his moody sprite,  
 And sent him armed forth by night.

I borrowed steed and mail  
 And weapons from his sleeping band;

And, passing from a postern door,  
 We met and 'countered, hand to hand, —  
 He fell on Gifford-moor.

24c

For the death-stroke my brand I drew, —  
Oh! then my helmed head he knew,

The palmer's cowl was gone, —  
Then had three inches of my blade  
The heavy debt of vengeance paid, —  
My hand the thought of Austin stayed;  
I left him there alone. —

O good old man! even from the grave  
Thy spirit could thy master save:  
If I had slain my foeman, ne'er  
Had Whitby's abbess in her fear  
Given to my hand this packet dear,  
Of power to clear my injured fame  
And vindicate De Wilton's name. —  
Perchance you heard the abbess tell  
Of the strange pageantry of hell

25c

That broke our secret speech —  
It rose from the infernal shade,  
Or featly was some juggle played,  
A tale of peace to teach.

26c

Appeal to Heaven I judged was best  
When my name came among the rest.

## IX

“Now here within Tantallon hold  
To Douglas late my tale I told,  
To whom my house was known of old.  
Won by my proofs, his falchion bright  
This eve anew shall dub me knight.  
These were the arms that once did turn  
The tide of fight on Otterburne,  
And Harry Hotspur forced to yield  
When the Dead Douglas won the field.

27c



These Angus gave — his armorer's care  
 Ere morn shall every breach repair ;  
 For nought, he said, was in his halls  
 But ancient armor on the walls,  
 And aged chargers in the stalls,  
 And women, priests, and gray-haired men ;  
 The rest were all in Twisel glen. 28c  
 And now I watch my armor here,  
 By law of arms, till midnight's near ;  
 Then, once again a belted knight,  
 Seek Surrey's camp with dawn of light.

## X

" There soon again we meet, my Clare !  
 This baron means to guide thee there :  
 Douglas reveres his king's command,  
 Else would he take thee from his band.  
 And there thy kinsman Surrey, too,  
 Will give De Wilton justice due. 29a  
 Now meeter far for martial broil,  
 Firmer my limbs and strung by toil,  
 Once more " — " O Wilton ! must we then  
 Risk new-found happiness again,  
     Trust fate of arms once more ?  
 And is there not an humble glen  
     Where we, content and poor,  
 Might build a cottage in the shade,  
 A shepherd thou, and I to aid  
     Thy task on dale and moor ? — 30a  
 That reddening brow ! — too well I know  
 Not even thy Clare can peace bestow  
     While falsehood stains thy name :  
 Go then to fight ! Clare bids thee go !

Clare can a warrior's feelings know  
 And weep a warrior's shame,  
 Can Red Earl Gilbert's spirit feel,  
 Buckle the spurs upon thy heel  
 And belt thee with thy brand of steel,  
 And send thee forth to fame!"

310

## XI

That night upon the rocks and bay  
 The midnight moonbeam slumbering lay,  
 And poured its silver light and pure  
 Through loophole and through embrasure  
 Upon Tantallon tower and hall;  
 But chief where arched windows wide  
 Illuminate the chapel's pride  
 The sober glances fall.

Much was there need; though seamed with scars,  
 Two veterans of the Douglas' wars,

320

Though two gray priests were there,  
 And each a blazing torch held high,  
 You could not by their blaze descry  
 The chapel's carving fair.

Amid that dim and smoky light,  
 Checkering the silvery moonshine bright,

A bishop° by the altar stood,  
 A noble lord of Douglas blood,  
 With mitre sheen and rochet white.

Yet showed his meek and thoughtful eye  
 But little pride of prelacy;

330

More pleased that in a barbarous age  
 He gave rude Scotland Virgil's page  
 Than that beneath his rule he held  
 The bishopric of fair Dunkeld.

Beside him ancient Angus stood,  
 Doffed his furred gown and sable hood ;  
 O'er his huge form and visage pale  
 He wore a cap and shirt of mail,  
 And leaned his large and wrinkled hand 340  
 Upon the huge and sweeping brand  
 Which wont of yore in battle fray  
 His foeman's limbs to shred away,  
 As wood-knife lops the sapling spray.  
     He seemed as, from the tombs around  
     Rising at judgment-day,  
     Some giant Douglas may be found  
     In all his old array ;  
 So pale his face, so huge his limb,  
 So old his arms, his look so grim. 350

## XII

Then at the altar Wilton kneels,  
 And Clare the spurs bound on his heels ;  
 And think what next he must have felt  
 At buckling of the falchion belt !  
     And judge how Clara changed her hue  
     While fastening to her lover's side  
     A friend, which, though in danger tried,  
     He once had found untrue !  
 Then Douglas struck him with his blade :  
 " Saint Michael and Saint Andrew aid, 360  
     I dub thee knight.  
 Arise, Sir Ralph, De Wilton's heir !  
 For king, for church, for lady fair,  
     See that thou fight."  
 And Bishop Gawain, as he rose,  
 Said : " Wilton ! grieve not for thy woes,

Disgrace, and trouble ;  
 For He who honor best bestows  
 May give thee double.”  
 De Wilton sobbed, for sob he must ;  
 “ Where’er I meet a Douglas, trust  
 That Douglas is my brother ! ”  
 “ Nay, nay,” old Angus said, “ not so ;  
 To Surrey’s camp thou now must go,  
 Thy wrongs no longer smother.  
 I have two sons in yonder field ;  
 And, if thou meet’st them under shield,  
 Upon them bravely — do thy worst,  
 And foul fall him that blenches first ! ”

37c

## XIII

Not far advanced was morning day  
 When Marmion did his troop array  
 To Surrey’s camp to ride ;  
 He had safe-conduct for his band  
 Beneath the royal seal and hand,  
 And Douglas gave a guide.  
 The ancient earl with stately grace  
 Would Clara on her palfrey place,  
 And whispered in an undertone,  
 “ Let the hawk stoop, his prey is flown.”  
 The train from out the castle drew,  
 But Marmion stopped to bid adieu :  
 “ Though something I might plain,” he said,  
 “ Of cold respect to stranger guest,  
 Sent hither by your king’s behest,  
 While in Tantallon’s towers I stayed,  
 Part we in friendship from your land,  
 And, noble earl, receive my hand.” —

38c

39c

But Douglas round him drew his cloak,  
 Folded his arms, and thus he spoke: —  
 “ My manors, halls, and bowers shall still  
 Be open at my sovereign’s will  
 To each one whom he lists, howe’er  
 Unmeet to be the owner’s peer.  
 My castles are my king’s alone,  
 From turret to foundation-stone —  
 The hand of Douglas is his own,  
 And never shall in friendly grasp  
 The hand of such as Marmion clasp.”

400

## XIV

Burned Marmion’s swarthy cheek like fire  
 And shook his very frame for ire,  
 And — “ This to me ! ” he said,  
 “ An ’t were not for thy hoary beard,  
 Such hand as Marmion’s had not spared  
 To cleave the Douglas’s head !  
 And first I tell thee, haughty peer,  
 He who does England’s message here,  
 Although the meanest in her state,  
 May well, proud Angus, be thy mate ;  
 And, Douglas, more I tell thee here,  
 Even in thy pitch of pride,  
 Here in thy hold, thy vassals near, —  
 Nay, never look upon your lord,  
 And lay your hands upon your sword, —  
 I tell thee, thou ’rt defied !  
 And if thou saidst I am not peer  
 To any lord in Scotland here,  
 Lowland or Highland, far or near,  
 Lord Angus, thou hast lied ! ”

410

420



On the earl's cheek the flush of rage  
O'ercame the ashen hue of age: 430  
Fierce he broke forth, — "And darest thou then  
To beard the lion in his den,  
The Douglas in his hall?  
And hopest thou thence unscathed to go? —  
No, by Saint Bride of Bothwell, no!  
Up drawbridge, grooms — what, warder, ho!  
Let the portcullis fall." —  
Lord Marmion turned, — well was his need, —  
And dashed the rowels in his steed,  
Like arrow through the archway sprung, 440  
The ponderous grate behind him rung;  
To pass there was such scanty room,  
The bars descending razed his plume.

## XV

The steed along the drawbridge flies  
Just as it trembled on the rise;  
Not lighter does the swallow skim  
Along the smooth lake's level brim:  
And when Lord Marmion reached his band,  
He halts, and turns with clenched hand,  
And shout of loud defiance pours, 450  
And shook his gauntlet at the towers.  
"Horse! horse!" the Douglas cried, "and chase!"  
But soon he reined his fury's pace:  
"A royal messenger he came,  
Though most unworthy of the name. —  
A letter forged! Saint Jude to speed!  
Did ever knight so foul a deed?  
At first in heart it liked me ill  
When the king praised his clerkly skill.

Thanks to Saint Bothan, son of mine, 46a  
 Save Gawain, ne'er could pen a line ;  
 So swore I, and I swear it still,  
 Let my boy-bishop fret his fill. —  
 Saint Mary mend my fiery mood !  
 Old age ne'er cools the Douglas blood,  
 I thought to slay him where he stood.  
 'T is pity of him too," he cried :  
 " Bold can he speak and fairly ride,  
 I warrant him a warrior tried."  
 With this his mandate he recalls, 47c  
 And slowly seeks his castle halls.

## XVI

The day in Marmion's journey wore ;  
 Yet, ere his passion's gust was o'er,  
 They crossed the heights of Stanrig-moor.  
 His troop more closely thence he scanned,  
 And missed the Palmer from the band.  
 " Palmer or not," young Blount did say,  
 " He parted at the peep of day ;  
 Good sooth, it was in strange array."  
 " In what array ?" said Marmion quick. 48c  
 " My lord, I ill can spell the trick ;  
 But all night long with clink and bang  
 Close to my couch did hammers clang ° ;  
 At dawn the falling drawbridge rang,  
 And from a loophole while I peep,  
 Old Bell-the-Cat came from the keep,  
 Wrapped in a gown of sables fair,  
 As fearful of the morning air ;  
 Beneath, when that was blown aside,  
 A rusty shirt of mail I spied, 49c

By Archibald won in bloody work  
 Against the Saracen and Turk:  
 Last night it hung not in the hall;  
 I thought some marvel would befall.  
 And next I saw them saddled lead  
 Old Cheviot forth, the earl's best steed,  
 A matchless horse, though something old,  
 Prompt in his paces, cool and bold.  
 I heard the Sheriff Sholto say  
 The earl did much the Master<sup>o</sup> pray  
 To use him on the battle-day,  
 But he preferred "— "Nay, Henry, cease!  
 Thou sworn horse-courser, hold thy peace.—  
 Eustace, thou bear'st a brain — I pray,  
 What did Blount see at break of day?" —

500

## XVII

"In brief, my lord, we both descried —  
 For then I stood by Henry's side —  
 The Palmer mount and outwards ride  
 Upon the earl's own favorite steed.  
 All sheathed he was in armor bright,  
 And much resembled that same knight  
 Subdued by you in Cotswold fight;  
 Lord Angus wished him speed." —  
 The instant that Fitz-Eustace spoke,  
 A sudden light on Marmion broke: —  
 "Ah! dastard fool, to reason lost!"  
 He muttered; "'T was nor fay nor ghost  
 I met upon the moonlight wold,  
 But living man of earthly mould. —  
 O dotage blind and gross!  
 Had I but fought as wont, one thrust

510

520

Had laid De Wilton in the dust,  
 My path no more to cross. —  
 How stand we now? — he told his tale  
 To Douglas, and with some avail;  
 'T was therefore gloomed his rugged brow. —  
 Will Surrey dare to entertain  
 'Gainst Marmion charge disproved and vain?  
 Small risk of that, I trow.  
 Yet Clare's sharp questions must I shun, 530  
 Must separate Constance from the nun —  
 Oh! what a tangled web we weave  
 When first we practise to deceive!  
 A Palmer too! — no wonder why  
 I felt rebuked beneath his eye;  
 I might have known there was but one  
 Whose look could quell Lord Marmion."

## XVIII

Stung with these thoughts, he urged to speed  
 His troop, and reached at eve the Tweed,  
 Where Lennel's convent closed their march. — 540  
 There now is left but one frail arch,  
 Yet mourn thou not its cells;  
 Our time a fair exchange has made:  
 Hard by, in hospitable shade,  
 A reverend pilgrim° dwells,  
 Well worth the whole Bernardine brood  
 That e'er wore sandal, frock, or hood. —  
 Yet did Saint Bernard's abbot there  
 Give Marmion entertainment fair,  
 And lodging for his train and Clare. 550  
 Next morn the baron climbed the tower,  
 To view afar the Scottish power,

Encamped on Flodden edge ;  
 The white pavilions made a show  
 Like remnants of the winter snow  
     Along the dusky ridge.  
 Long Marmion looked : — at length his eye  
 Unusual movement might descry  
     Amid the shifting lines ;  
 The Scottish host drawn out appears, 56c  
 For, flashing on the hedge of spears,  
     The eastern sunbeam shines.  
 Their front now deepening, now extending,  
 Their flank inclining, wheeling, bending,  
 Now drawing back, and now descending,  
 The skilful Marmion well could know  
 They watched the motions of some foe  
 Who traversed on the plain below.

## XIX

Even so it was. From Flodden ridge  
     The Scots beheld the English host 57c  
     Leave Barmore-wood, their evening post,  
     And heedful watched them as they crossed  
 The Till by Twisel Bridge.  
     High sight it is and haughty, while  
     They dive into the deep defile ;  
     Beneath the caverned cliff they fall,  
     Beneath the castle's airy wall.  
 By rock, by oak, by hawthorn-tree,  
     Troop after troop are disappearing ;  
     Troop after troop their banners rearing 58c  
 Upon the eastern bank you see ;  
 Still pouring down the rocky den°  
     Where flows the sullen Till,°



And rising from the dim-wood glen,  
Standards on standards, men on men,  
    In slow succession still,  
And sweeping o'er the Gothic arch,  
And pressing on. in ceaseless march,  
    To gain the opposing hill.

That morn. to many a trumpet clang,  
Twisel! thy rock's deep echo rang;  
And many a chief of birth and rank,  
Saint Helen! at thy fountain drank.  
Thy hawthorn glade, which now we see  
In spring-tide bloom so lavishly,  
Had then from many an axe its doom,  
To give the marching columns room.

59c

## XX

And why stands Scotland idly now,  
Dark Flodden! on thy airy brow,  
Since England gains the pass the while,  
And struggles through the deep defile?  
What checks the fiery soul of James?  
Why sits that champion of the dames  
    Inactive on his steed,  
And sees, between him and his land,  
Between him and Tweed's southern strand,  
    His host Lord Surrey lead?  
What vails the vain knight-errant's brand? —  
O Douglas, for thy leading wand!  
    Fierce Randolph, for thy speed!  
Oh! for one hour of Wallace wight,  
Or well-skilled Bruce, to rule the fight  
And cry, "Saint Andrew and our right!"  
Another sight had seen that morn,

60c

61c

From Fate's dark book a leaf been torn,  
 And Flodden had been Bannockbourne! —  
 The precious hour has passed in vain,  
 And England's host has gained the plain,  
 Wheeling their march and circling still  
 Around the base of Flodden hill.

629

## XXI

Ere yet the bands met Marmion's eye,  
 Fitz-Eustace shouted loud and high,  
 "Hark! hark! my lord, an English drum!  
 And see ascending squadrons come  
 Between Tweed's river and the hill,  
 Foot, horse, and cannon! Hap what hap,  
 My basnet to a prentice cap,  
 Lord Surrey's o'er the Till! —  
 Yet more! yet more! — how fair arrayed  
 They file from out the hawthorn shade,  
 And sweep so gallant by!  
 With all their banners bravely spread,  
 And all their armor flashing high,  
 Saint George might waken from the dead,  
 To see fair England's standards fly." —  
 "Stint in thy prate," quoth Blount, "thou'dst best,  
 And listen to our Lord's behest." —  
 With kindling brow Lord Marmion said,  
 "This instant be our band arrayed;  
 The river must be quickly crossed,  
 That we may join Lord Surrey's host.  
 If fight King James, — as well I trust  
 That fight he will, and fight he must, —  
 The Lady Clare behind our lines  
 Shall tarry while the battle joins."

630

642

## XXII

Himself he swift on horseback threw,  
 Scarce to the abbot bade adieu,  
 Far less would listen to his prayer  
 To leave behind the helpless Clare.  
 Down to the Tweed his band he drew, 650  
 And muttered as the flood they view,  
 "The pheasant in the falcon's claw,  
 He scarce will yield to please a daw;  
 Lord Angus may the abbot awe,  
     So Clare shall bide with me."  
 Then on that dangerous ford and deep  
 Where to the Tweed Leat's eddies creep  
     He ventured desperately :  
 And not a moment will he bide  
 Till squire or groom before him ride ; 660  
 Headmost of all he stems the tide,  
     And stems it gallantly.  
 Eustace held Clare upon her horse,  
 Old Hubert led her rein,  
 Stoutly they braved the current's course,  
 And, though far downward driven perforce,  
     The southern bank they gain.  
 Behind them straggling came to shore,  
     As best they might, the train :  
 Each o'er his head his yew-bow bore, 670  
     A caution not in vain ;  
 Deep need that day that every string,  
 By wet unharmed, should sharply ring.  
 A moment then Lord Marmion stayed,  
 And breathed his steed, his men arrayed,  
     Then forward moved his band,  
 Until, Lord Surrey's rear-guard won,

He halted by a cross of stone,  
That on a hillock standing lone  
Did all the field command.

680

## XXIII

Hence might they see the full array  
Of either host for deadly fray ;  
Their marshalled lines stretched east and west,  
And fronted north and south,  
And distant salutation passed  
From the loud cannon mouth ;  
Not in the close successive rattle  
That breathes the voice of modern battle,  
But slow and far between.

The hillock gained, Lord Marmion stayed : 690  
“ Here, by this cross,” he gently said,  
“ You well may view the scene.

Here shalt thou tarry, lovely Clare :  
Oh ! think of Marmion in thy prayer ! —  
Thou wilt not ? — well, no less my care  
Shall, watchful, for thy weal prepare. —  
You, Blount and Eustace, are her guard,  
With ten picked archers of my train ;  
With England if the day go hard,  
To Berwick speed amain. —

700

But if we conquer, cruel maid,  
My spoils shall at your feet be laid,  
When here we meet again.”

He waited not for answer there,  
And would not mark the maid's despair,  
Nor heed the discontented look  
From either squire, but spurred amain,  
And, dashing through the battle-plain,  
His way to Surrey took.

## XXIV

"The good Lord Marmion, by my life! 710  
 Welcome to danger's hour! —  
 Short greeting serves in time of strife. —  
 Thus have I ranged my power :  
 Myself will rule this central host,  
 Stout Stanley fronts their right,  
 My sons command the vaward post,  
 With Brian Tunstall, stainless knight ;  
 Lord Dacre, with his horsemen light,  
 Shall be in rearward of the fight,  
 And succor those that need it most. 720  
 Now, gallant Marmion, well I know,  
 Would gladly to the vanguard go :  
 Edmund, the Admiral, Tunstall there,  
 With thee their charge will blithely share ;  
 There fight thine own retainers too  
 Beneath De Burg, thy steward true."  
 "Thanks, noble Surrey!" Marmion said,  
 Nor further greeting there he paid,  
 But, parting like a thunderbolt,  
 First in the vanguard made a halt, 730  
 Where such a shout there rose  
 Of "Marmion! Marmion!" that the cry,  
 Up Flodden mountain shrilling high,  
 Startled the Scottish foes.

## XXV

Blount and Fitz-Eustace rested still  
 With Lady Clare upon the hill,  
 On which — for far the day was spent —



The western sunbeams now were bent ;  
The cry they heard, its meaning knew,  
Could plain their distant comrades view ; 740  
Sadly to Blount did Eustace say,  
“ Unworthy office here to stay !  
No hope of gilded spurs to-day. —  
But see ! look up — on Flodden bent  
The Scottish foe has fired his tent.”

And sudden, as he spoke,  
From the sharp ridges of the hill,  
All downward to the banks of Till,  
Was wreathed in sable smoke.  
Volumed and vast, and rolling far, 750  
The cloud enveloped Scotland’s war

As down the hill they broke ;  
Nor martial shout, nor minstrel tone,  
Announced their march ; their tread alone,  
At times one warning trumpet blown,

At times a stifled hum,  
Told England, from his mountain-throne  
King James did rushing come.

Scarce could they hear or see their foes  
Until at weapon-point they close. — 760  
They close in clouds of smoke and dust,  
With sword-sway and with lance’s thrust ;

And such a yell was there,  
Of sudden and portentous birth,  
As if men fought upon the earth,  
And fiends in upper air ;  
Oh ! life and death were in the shout,  
Recoil and rally, charge and rout,

And triumph and despair.  
Long looked the anxious squires ; their eye 770  
Could in the darkness nought descry.

## XXVI

At length the freshening western blast  
 Aside the shroud of battle cast;  
 And first the ridge of mingled spears  
 Above the brightening cloud appears,  
 And in the smoke the pennons flew,  
 As in the storm the white seamew.  
 Then marked they, dashing broad and far,  
 The broken billows of the war,  
 And plumed crests of chieftains brave  
 Floating like foam upon the wave;

780

But not distinct they see:  
 Wide raged the battle on the plain;  
 Spears shook and falchions flashed amain;  
 Fell England's arrow-flight like rain;  
 Crests rose, and stooped, and rose again,  
 Wild and disorderly.

Amid the scene of tumult, high  
 They saw Lord Marmion's falcon fly;  
 And stainless Tunstall's banner white,  
 And Edmund Howard's lion bright,  
 Still bear them bravely in the fight,

790

Although against them come  
 Of gallant Gordons many a one,  
 And many a stubborn Badenoch-man,  
 And many a rugged Border clan,  
 With Huntly and with Home.

## XXVII

Far on the left, unseen the while,  
 Stanley broke Lennox and Argyle,  
 Though there the western mountaineer

800

Rushed with bare bosom on the spear,  
And flung the feeble targe aside,  
And with both hands the broadsword plied.  
'T was vain. — But Fortune, on the right,  
With fickle smile cheered Scotland's fight.  
Then fell that spotless banner white,

The Howard's lion fell;  
Yet still Lord Marmion's falcon flew  
With wavering flight, while fiercer grew  
Around the battle-yell.

81o

The Border slogan rent the sky!

A Home! a Gordon! was the cry:

Loud were the clanging blows;  
Advanced, — forced back, — now low, now high  
The pennon sunk and rose;

As bends the bark's mast in the gale,  
When rent are rigging, shrouds, and sail,  
It wavered mid the foes.

No longer Blount the view could bear:

"By heaven and all its saints! I swear  
I will not see it lost!

82c

Fitz-Eustace, you with Lady Clare

May bid your beads and patter prayer, —  
I gallop to the host."

And to the fray he rode amain,

Followed by all the archer train.

The fiery youth, with desperate charge,  
Made for a space an opening large, —

The rescued banner rose, —

But darkly closed the war around,

Like pine-tree rooted from the ground

83c

It sank among the foes.

Then Eustace mounted too, — yet stayed,  
As loath to leave the helpless maid,

When, fast as shaft can fly,  
 Bloodshot his eyes, his nostrils spread,  
 The loose rein dangling from his head,  
 Housing and saddle bloody red,  
 Lord Marmion's steed rushed by ;  
 And Eustace, maddening at the sight,  
 A look and sign to Clara cast  
 To mark he would return in haste,  
 Then plunged into the fight.

84c

## XXVIII

Ask me not what the maiden feels,  
 Left in that dreadful hour alone:  
 Perchance her reason stoops or reels ;  
 Perchance a courage, not her own,  
 Braces her mind to desperate tone. —  
 The scattered van of England wheels ; —  
 She only said, as loud in air  
 The tumult roared, " Is Wilton there ? " —  
 They fly, or, maddened by despair,  
 Fight but to die, — " Is Wilton there ? "  
 With that, straight up the hill there rode  
 Two horsemen drenched with gore,  
 And in their arms, a helpless load,  
 A wounded knight they bore.  
 His hand still strained the broken brand ;  
 His arms were smeared with blood and sand.  
 Dragged from among the horses' feet,  
 With dented shield and helmet beat,  
 The falcon-crest and plumage gone,  
 Can that be haughty Marmion ! . . .  
 Young Blount his armor did unlace,  
 And, gazing on his ghastly face,

85c

86c

Said, "By Saint George, he's gone!  
That spear-wound has our master sped,  
And see the deep cut on his head!

Good-night to Marmion." —  
"Unnurtured Blount! thy brawling cease: 870  
He opes his eyes," said Eustace; "peace!"

## XXIX

When, doffed his casque, he felt free air,  
Around 'gan Marmion wildly stare:  
"Where's Harry Blount? Fitz-Eustace where?  
Linger ye here, ye hearts of hare!

Redeem my pennon, — charge again!  
Cry, 'Marmion to the rescue!' — Vain!  
Last of my race, on battle-plain  
That shout shall ne'er be heard again! —  
Yet my last thought is England's — fly, 880

To Dacre bear my signet-ring;  
Tell him his squadrons up to bring. —  
Fitz-Eustace, to Lord Surrey hie:  
Tunstall lies dead upon the field,  
His lifeblood stains the spotless shield;  
Edmund is down; my life is reft;  
The Admiral alone is left.

Let Stanley charge with spur of fire, —  
With Chester charge, and Lancashire,  
Full upon Scotland's central host, 890  
Or victory and England's lost. —  
Must I bid twice? — hence, varlets! fly! —  
Leave Marmion here alone — to die."

They parted, and alone he lay;  
Clare drew her from the sight away,  
Till pain wrung forth a lowly moan,



And half he murmured, "Is there none  
 Of all my halls have nurst,  
 Page, squire, or groom, one cup to bring  
 Of blessed water from the spring,  
 To slake my dying thirst!"

900

## XXX

O Woman! in our hours of ease  
 Uncertain, coy, and hard to please,  
 And variable as the shade  
 By the light quivering aspen made;  
 When pain and anguish wring the brow,  
 A ministering angel thou! —  
 Scarce were the piteous accents said,  
 When with the baron's casque the maid  
 To the nigh streamlet ran :  
 Forgot were hatred, wrongs, and fears;  
 The plaintive voice alone she hears,  
 Sees but the dying man.  
 She stooped her by the runnel's side,  
 But in abhorrence backward drew;  
 For, oozing from the mountain's side  
 Where raged the war, a dark-red tide  
 Was curdling in the streamlet blue.  
 Where shall she turn? — behold her mark  
 A little fountain cell,  
 Where water, clear as diamond-spark,  
 In a stone basin fell.  
 Above, some half-worn letters say,  
 Drink. weary. pilgrim. drink. and. pray.  
 For. the. kind. soul. of. Sibyl. Grey.  
 Who. built. this. cross. and. well.  
 She filled the helm and back she hied,

910

920

And with surprise and joy espied  
 A monk supporting Marmion's head;  
 A pious man, whom duty brought  
 To dubious verge of battle fought, 930  
 To shrieve the dying, bless the dead.

## XXXI

Deep drank Lord Marmion of the wave,  
 And, as she stooped his brow to lave —  
 “Is it the hand of Clare,” he said,  
 “Or injured Constance, bathes my head ?”  
 Then, as remembrance rose, —  
 “Speak not to me of shrift or prayer!  
 I must redress her woes.  
 Short space, few words, are mine to spare; 940  
 Forgive and listen, gentle Clare!” —  
 “Alas!” she said, “the while, —  
 Oh! think of your immortal weal!  
 In vain for Constance is your zeal;  
 She — died at Holy Isle.” —  
 Lord Marmion started from the ground  
 As light as if he felt no wound,  
 Though in the action burst the tide  
 In torrents from his wounded side.  
 “Then it was truth,” he said — “I knew 950  
 That the dark presage<sup>o</sup> must be true. —  
 I would the Fiend, to whom belongs  
 The vengeance due to all her wrongs,  
 Would spare me but a day!  
 For wasting fire, and dying groan,  
 And priests slain on the altar stone,  
 Might bribe him for delay.  
 It may not be! — this dizzy trance —

Curse on yon base marauder's lance,  
 And doubly cursed my failing brand!  
 A sinful heart makes feeble hand."  
 Then fainting down on earth he sunk,  
 Supported by the trembling monk.

960

## XXXII

With fruitless labor Clara bound  
 And strove to stanch the gushing wound;  
 The monk with unavailing cares  
 Exhausted all the Church's prayers.  
 Ever, he said, that, close and near,  
 A lady's voice was in his ear,  
 And that the priest he could not hear;  
 For that she ever sung,

970

*"In the lost battle, borne down by the flying,  
 Where mingles war's rattle with groans of the dying!"*

So the notes rung. —

"Avoid thee, Fiend! — with cruel hand  
 Shake not the dying sinner's sand! —

Oh! look, my son, upon yon sign  
 Of the Redeemer's grace divine;

Oh! think on faith and bliss! —

By many a death-bed I have been,  
 And many a sinner's parting seen,

But never aught like this." —

The war, that for a space did fail,  
 Now trebly thundering swelled the gale,

And "Stanley!" was the cry. —

A light on Marmion's visage spread,

And fired his glazing eye;

With dying hand above his head

He shook the fragment of his blade,

980

And shouted "Victory! —  
 Charge, Chester, charge! On, Stanley, on!"  
 Were the last words of Marmion.

990

## XXXIII

By this, though deep the evening fell,  
 Still rose the battle's deadly swell,  
 For still the Scots around their king,  
 Unbroken, fought in desperate ring.  
 Where 's now their victor vaward wing,

Where Huntly, and where Home? —  
 Oh! for a blast of that dread horn,  
 On Fontarabian echoes borne,

1000

That to King Charles did come,  
 When Rowland brave, and Olivier,  
 And every paladin and peer,

On Roncesvalles died!  
 Such blasts might warn them, not in vain,  
 To quit the plunder of the slain  
 And turn the doubtful day again,

While yet on Flodden side  
 Afar the Royal Standard flies,  
 And round it toils and bleeds and dies

1010

Our Caledonian pride!  
 In vain the wish — for far away,  
 While spoil and havoc mark their way,  
 Near Sibyl's Cross the plunderers stray. —  
 "O lady," cried the monk, "away!"

And placed her on her steed,  
 And led her to the chapel fair  
 Of Tilmouth upon Tweed.  
 There all the night they spent in prayer,

And at the dawn of morning there  
She met her kinsman, Lord Fitz-Clare.

1020

## XXXIV

But as they left the darkening heath  
More desperate grew the strife of death.  
The English shafts in volleys hailed,  
In headlong charge their horse assailed;  
Front, flank, and rear, the squadrons sweep  
To break the Scottish circle deep

That fought around their king.

But yet, though thick the shafts as snow,  
Though charging knights like whirlwinds go, 1030  
Though billmen ply the ghastly blow,

Unbroken was the ring;

The stubborn spearmen still made good  
Their dark impenetrable wood,  
Each stepping where his comrade stood

The instant that he fell.

No thought was there of dastard flight;  
Linked in the serried phalanx tight,  
Groom fought like noble, squire like knight,

As fearlessly and well,

1040

Till utter darkness closed her wing  
O'er their thin host and wounded king.  
Then skilful Surrey's sage commands  
Led back from strife his shattered bands;

And from the charge they drew,

As mountain-waves from wasted lands

Sweep back to ocean blue.

Then did their loss his foemen know;  
Their king, their lords, their mightiest low,  
They melted from the field, as snow,

1050



When streams are swoln, and south winds blow,  
 Dissolves in silent dew.  
 Tweed's echoes heard the ceaseless plash,  
 While many a broken band  
 Disordered through her currents dash,  
 To gain the Scottish land ;  
 To town and tower, to down and dale,  
 To tell red Flodden's dismal tale,  
 And raise the universal wail.  
 Tradition, legend, tune, and song  
 Shall many an age that wail prolong ;  
 Still from the sire the son shall hear  
 Of the stern strife and carnage drear  
 Of Flodden's fatal field,  
 Where shivered was fair Scotland's spear  
 And broken was her shield° !

1060

## XXXV

Day dawns upon the mountain's side. —  
 There, Scotland ! lay thy bravest pride,  
 Chiefs, knights, and nobles, many a one ;  
 The sad survivors all are gone. —  
 View not that corpse mistrustfully,  
 Defaced and mangled though it be ;  
 Nor to yon Border castle high  
 Look northward with upbraiding eye ;  
 Nor cherish hope in vain  
 That, journeying far on foreign strand,  
 The Royal Pilgrim to his land  
 May yet return again.  
 He saw the wreck his rashness wrought ;  
 Reckless of life, he desperate fought,  
 And fell on Flodden plain :

1070

1080

And well in death his trusty brand,  
 Firm clenched within his manly hand,  
 Beseemed the monarch slain.  
 But oh! how changed since yon blithe night! —  
 Gladly I turn me from the sight  
 Unto my tale again.

## XXXVI

Short is my tale: — Fitz-Eustace's care  
 A pierced and mangled body bare  
 To moated Lichfield's lofty pile; 1090  
 And there, beneath the southern aisle,  
 A tomb with Gothic sculpture fair  
 Did long Lord Marmion's image bear. —  
 Now vainly for its site you look;  
 'T was levelled when fanatic Brook°  
 The fair cathedral stormed and took,  
 But, thanks to Heaven and good Saint Chad,  
 A guerdon meet the spoiler had! —  
 There erst was martial Marmion found,  
 His feet upon a couchant hound, 1100  
 His hands to heaven upraised;  
 And all around, on scutcheon rich,  
 And tablet carved, and fretted niche,  
 His arms and feats were blazed.  
 And yet, though all was carved so fair,  
 And priest for Marmion breathed the prayer,  
 The last Lord Marmion lay not there.  
 From Ettrick woods a peasant swain  
 Followed his lord to Flodden plain, —  
 One of those flowers° whom plaintive lay 1110  
 In Scotland mourns as "wede away":  
 Sore wounded, Sibyl's Cross he spied,

And dragged him to its foot, and died  
 Close by the noble Marmion's side.  
 The spoilers stripped and gashed the slain,  
 And thus their corpses were mista'en;  
 And thus in the proud baron's tomb  
 The lowly woodsman took the room.

## XXXVII

Less easy task it were to show  
 Lord Marmion's nameless grave<sup>o</sup> and low. 1120  
 They dug his grave e'en where he lay,  
 But every mark is gone:  
 Time's wasting hand has done away  
 The simple Cross of Sibyl Grey,  
 And broke her font of stone;  
 But yet from out the little hill  
 Oozes the slender springlet still.  
 Oft halts the stranger there,  
 For thence may best his curious eye  
 The memorable field descry; 1130  
 And shepherd boys repair  
 To seek the water-flag and rush,  
 And rest them by the hazel bush,  
 And plait their garlands fair,  
 Nor dream they sit upon the grave  
 That holds the bones of Marmion brave. —  
 When thou shalt find the little hill,  
 With thy heart commune and be still.  
 If ever in temptation strong  
 Thou left'st the right path for the wrong, 1140  
 If every devious step thus trod  
 Still led thee further from the road,  
 Dread thou to speak presumptuous doom

On noble Marmion's lowly tomb;  
 But say, "He died a gallant knight,  
 With sword in hand, for England's right."

## XXXVIII

I do not rhyme to that dull elf  
 Who cannot image to himself  
 That all through Flodden's dismal night  
 Wilton was foremost in the fight, 115c  
 That when brave Surrey's steed was slain  
 'T was Wilton mounted him again;  
 'T was Wilton's brand that deepest hewed  
 Amid the spearmen's stubborn wood:  
 Unnamed by Holinshed or Hall,  
 He was the living soul of all;  
 That, after fight, his faith made plain,  
 He won his rank and lands again,  
 And charged his old paternal shield  
 With bearings won on Flodden Field. 116c  
 Nor sing I to that simple maid  
 To whom it must in terms be said  
 That king and kinsmen did agree  
 To bless fair Clara's constancy;  
 Who cannot, unless I relate,  
 Paint to her mind the bridal's state, —  
 That Wolsey's voice the blessing spoke,  
 More, Sands, and Denny, passed the joke;  
 That bluff King Hal the curtain drew,  
 And Katherine's hand the stocking threw; 117c  
 And afterwards, for many a day,  
 That it was held enough to say,  
 In blessing to a wedded pair,  
 "Love they like Wilton and like Clare!"

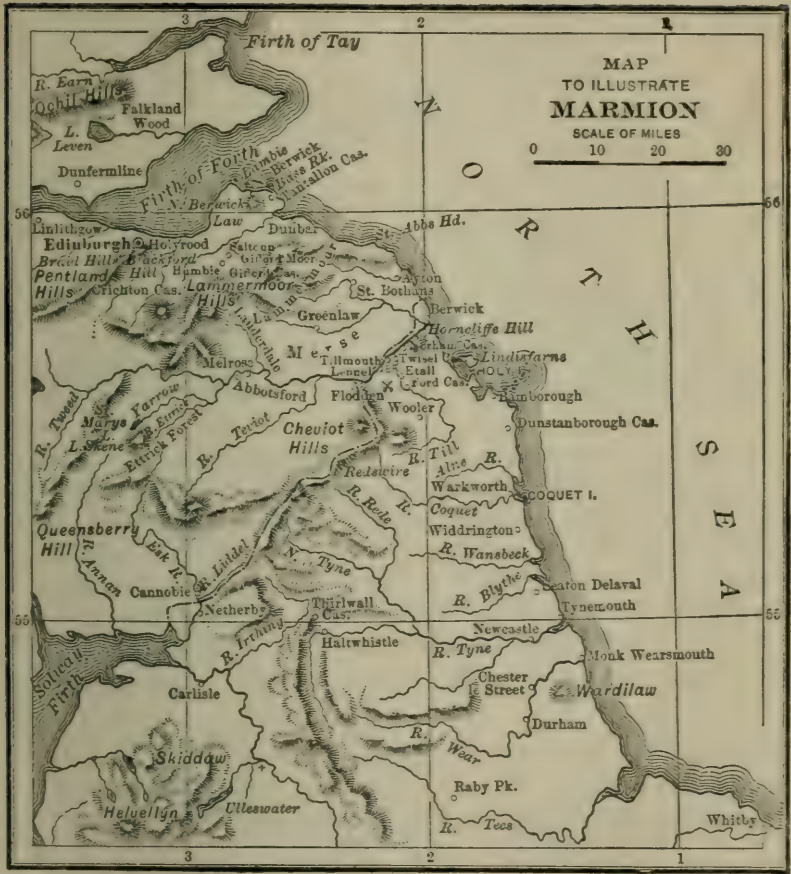
## L'ENVOY

### TO THE READER

WHY then a final note prolong,  
Or lengthen out a closing song,  
Unless to bid the gentles speed,  
Who long have listed to my rede?  
To statesman grave, if such may deign  
To read the minstrel's idle strain,  
Sound head, clean hand, and piercing wit,  
And patriotic heart — as PITT!  
A garland for the hero's crest,  
And twined by her he loves the best! 10  
To every lovely lady bright,  
What can I wish but faithful knight?  
To every faithful lover too,  
What can I wish but lady true?  
And knowledge to the studious sage,  
And pillow soft to head of age!  
To thee, dear school-boy, whom my lay  
Has cheated of thy hour of play,  
Light task and merry holiday!  
To all, to each, a fair good-night, 20  
And pleasing dreams, and slumbers light!







BORNAY & CO., N.Y.



## NOTES



### INTRODUCTION TO CANTO FIRST

**William Stewart Rose**, a poetical friend, whose home in Hampshire Scott visited when he went to London on business. Mr. Rose took Scott about the New Forest and to the Isle of Wight. When Rose visited Scotland Scott entertained him by taking him fishing, and hunting hares.

**LINE 36. The gathering blast.** If the student will now turn to the introduction to Canto Fourth and read, beginning at line 74, he will find a natural continuation of the thought. Scott's introduction of Nelson, Pitt, and Fox is a just tribute, and was doubtless a popular hit, but it makes much the same impression on one now as would be produced by the introduction into *Evangeline* of a brief eulogy on Washington, Franklin, Sam Adams, and Marion.

**72. Gadite wave.** The Bay of Trafalgar, not far from Cadiz, or *Gades* of old.

**82. Hafnia, Copenhagen.** Scott is enumerating the scenes of Nelson's naval victories.

**111. Palinure's.** Palinurus, the pilot of Æneas. Virgil, *Æneid*, v. 833.

**127. His rival slumbers nigh.** Fox and Pitt lie near together in the north aisle of Westminster Abbey.

**203. Ye heard the Border Minstrel.** Scott credits Fox and Pitt with having spoken words of praise for his *Border Minstrelsy* and *Lay of the Last Minstrel*.

259. **Morgana's fated house.** For a brief account of the romance of *Morte d'Arthur*, see Scott's *Notes* in any complete edition of his works.

310. **Thy fair achievement.** The reference is to the literary work of Mr. Rose, to whom this introduction is addressed.

312. **Ytene's oaks.** The New Forest in Hampshire.

314. **Ascapart and Bevis bold.** Ascapart was a giant who figured in the old romances. He was thirty feet high, and could carry under his arm a horseman with his steed. He was conquered by Sir Bevis of Southampton, and the story of the conflict is told in the romance entitled the *History of Bevis of Hampton*, which was known to Scott in the translation of Mr. George Ellis.

315. **Red King.** William Second, surnamed Rufus, accidentally killed by Walter Tyrrell in the year 1100. Boldrewood was a part of the New Forest in Hampshire.

321-325. **Amadis.** The references are to characters in the romances of *Amadis de Gaul*, translated by Rose in 1803, and of *Partenopex de Blois*, translated by Rose in 1807.

321. **So famed in hall.** So well known in the minstrel songs chanted in the hall at the feasts.

322. **For Oriana.** In behalf of Oriana, his loved one, Amadis overcame the power of the Necromancer.

## CANTO FIRST

1. **The castle.** "The ruinous castle of Norham is situated on the southern bank of the Tweed, about six miles above Berwick, and where that river is still the boundary between England and Scotland. The extent of its ruins, as well as its historical importance, show it to have been a place of magnificence as well as strength. It was repeatedly taken and retaken during the wars between England and Scotland; and, indeed scarce any happened in which it had not a principal share. Norham Castle is situated on a steep bank which overhangs the river." — SCOTT, *Notes*.



2-3. Consult the map, p. 215.

4. Look up the illustrated article on *castle* in Webster's *International* or in the *Century Dictionary*.

"According to Mr. Pinkerton, there is, in the British Museum, a curious memoir of the Dacres on the state of Norham Castle in 1522, not long after the battle of Flodden. The inner ward or keep is represented as impregnable: 'The provisions are three great vats of salt eels, forty-four kine, three hogsheads of salted salmon, forty quarters of grain, besides many cows, and four hundred sheep lying under the castle wall nightly; but a number of the arrows wanted feathers, and a good *Fletcher* (*i.e.* maker of arrows) was required.'" — SCOTT, *History of Scotland*, vol. ii. p. 201, note.

14. **Saint George's banner.** Norham Castle stood on the English side of the Tweed and, of course, displayed St. George's banner, a red cross on a white ground, at that time the flag of England.

26. **The Border** is a name given to the territory on either side of the line dividing England and Scotland.

29. **Horncliff-hill.** The village of Horncliff is a short distance below Norham on the Tweed. Marmion comes from the coast. Look up the meaning of "plump."

39. **The captain.** The knight in charge of the castle. For his name and titles see 192. For the reason of his great eagerness to welcome Marmion see iii. 248. An office-holder naturally desires influence at court.

43. **Malvoisie.** The Malmsey wine. A sweet wine made now mostly in the Canary and Madeira Islands and in Spain.

57. **Let the drawbridge fall.** See vi. 436, 445, and 485.

65 and 73. Look up the dates of Flodden and Bosworth. Estimate Marmion's age.

77. **A leader sage.** Certain critics have called attention to the want of connection between some of the particulars enumerated in this sentence and the conclusion. The "square-turned joints" and

“curly hair,” so it is claimed, are quite as often accompaniments of stupidity as of wisdom. What is your opinion?

79. **Milan, Italy**, was celebrated for the manufacture of fine steel armor.

88. **To check, in falconry**, is to turn, when in pursuit of proper game, and fly after other birds. The motto is a hint to mind one's own business, or at least to avoid interference with the affairs of Marmion.

89. Students with even slight skill in drawing with colored crayon or water colors will find their mental picture sharpened by trying a sketch of Lord Marmion as he rode in over the drawbridge.

95. **Gilded spurs**. One of the emblems of knighthood. See vi. 42.

98. **Bear the ring away**. A ring was suspended at about the height of the head or breast of a man on horseback. The young squires in training for knighthood were taught to ride at full speed and bear away the ring on the point of a lance.

107. **Ambling palfrey**. Supply, *for use*.

108. **Him listed ease his battle-steed**. *Ease* is an infinitive used as the subject of *listed*. *Him* is the indirect object of *listed*. The clause means, when it pleased him to ease or rest his war-horse.

116. **In hosen black**. *Hosen* is the Old English weak plural. The language once had *oxen*, *housen*, *eyen*, and not a few other such plurals. But the ending in *s* of the strong nouns, the most numerous class, has supplanted the weak form. We still have *oxen* in use, together with the irregularly formed plurals, *children* and *brethren*. See *en* in your dictionary.

122. **A cloth-yard shaft**. An arrow a cloth-yard long. The English cloth measure was 45 inches, the Scottish 37. See v. 18.

125. **Dusty palfreys**. The time is August.

139. **Morrice-pikes**. The Morrice Pike or Moorish Pike was a heavy spear.

149. **Brook.** To render submissive. Hence, to manage, or control, to guide with the rein.

151. **Tabards.** See Webster's *International* for a cut.

157. **Lord of Fontenaye.** "Lord Marmion, the principal character of the present romance, is entirely a fictitious personage. In earlier times, indeed, the family of Marmion, Lords of Fontenay, in Normandy, was highly distinguished. Robert de Marmion, Lord of Fontenay, a distinguished follower of the Conqueror, obtained a grant of the castle and town of Tamworth, and also of the manor of Scrivelby, in Lincolnshire. One or both of these noble possessions was held by the honorable service of being the royal champion, as the ancestors of Marmion had formerly been to the Dukes of Normandy. But after the castle and demesne of Tamworth had passed through four successive barons from Robert, the family became extinct in the person of Philip de Marmion. I have not, therefore, created a new family, but only revived the titles of an old one in an imaginary personage." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

It was the proud duty of the *royal champion*, to whom Scott alludes, to ride into the coronation hall in advance of the royal procession and demand in a loud voice whether any one wished to question the right of the new king to be crowned, a custom now discontinued.

170. **Heralds loudly cried.** Note that Marmion is greeted by minstrels, on whom, and the soldiery, he showers a handful of golden coins; the pursuivants, who are attendant upon the heralds as the squires are attendant upon the knight, meet him on the doorstep of the donjon, and are rewarded by a golden chain; the heralds announce his station and martial virtues to the guests in the hall; finally Sir Hugh comes forward and conducts him to the seat of honor.

171. **Lordlings.** Gentlemen. A term used by an inferior in addressing a company. Its application does not indicate rank. See Chaucer's prologue for a similar use of *lordynges* by the host of the "Tabard," who is not addressing men of rank.

——— “Now, lordynges, trewely,  
Ye been to me right welcome, hertely.”

175-190. **Ralph de Wilton.** The student will do well to anticipate by reading ii. 518-537, and v. 580-622. Look up an account of the ordeal by combat. A fine description of such a combat is given in *Ivanhoe*.

192. **Sir Hugh the Heron.** “Were accuracy of any consequence in a fictitious narrative, this castellan’s name ought to have been William; for William Heron of Ford was husband to the famous Lady Ford, whose siren charms are said to have cost our James IV. so dear. Moreover, the said William Heron was, at the time supposed, a prisoner in Scotland, being surrendered by Henry VIII., on account of his share in the slaughter of Sir Robert Ker of Cessford. His wife, represented in the text as residing at the Court of Scotland, was, in fact, living in her own castle at Ford.” — SCOTT, *Notes*.

200. **A rhyme of deadly feud.** The quotation is from a ballad called *The Death of Featherstonehaugh* and may be found in Scott’s *Border Minstrelsy*. It is stated on the authority of Lockhart that the ballad was written by an acquaintance of Scott and was palmed off on him as a genuine border ballad of antiquity. The short passage illustrates the value of looking into the formation of proper names. *Wick*, for instance, means village, being borrowed from the Latin *vicus*, and appears in *Berwick*, *Warwick*, and in *Hawick*. *Riding* is from an old *thriding* (= thirling), meaning the third part. The North-thriding, or North-third, of Yorkshire became the North-riding by dropping the second *th*. Finally the term riding came to mean a division of a county. *Hardriding Dick* is simply Richard of Hardriding without reference to his horsemanship. A *haugh* is a low meadow by a stream, and *shaw* signifies a wood or copse. Except as they were wisely retained from the Indians our American names have little local significance.

217. **Arms from rust.** By using them.



235. **That page.** The allusion is to Constance whose fate closes the second canto.

264. **Lindisfarn.** A convent from which Marmion had enticed Constance, but to which he had lately returned, or more properly betrayed her, now that she had become troublesome in his suit for Clare. The convent is on a semi-island off the coast of Northumberland — a day's ride from Norham.

281. **In fair Queen Margaret's bower.** See note on 192 for historical facts. As to whether Lady Heron is the Queen's guest at Edinburgh see v. 287-290, 293-312, and 361-379.

309. **Light to set their hoods.** "The garrisons of the English castles of Wark, Norham, and Berwick were, as may be easily supposed, very troublesome neighbors to Scotland. Sir Richard Maitland of Ledington wrote a poem called *The Blind Baron's Comfort*, when his barony of Blythe, in Lauderdale, was *harried* by Rowland Foster, the English captain of Wark, with his company, to the number of 300 men. They spoiled the poetical knight of 5000 sheep, 200 nolt, 30 horses and mares; the whole furniture of his house of Blythe, worth 100 pounds Scots, and everything else that was portable.

"The last line of the text contains a phrase by which the Borderers jocularly intimated the burning a house. When the Maxwells, in 1685, burned the castle of Lockwood, they said they did so to give the Lady Johnstone 'light to set her hood.' Nor was the phrase inapplicable; for, in a letter to which I have mislaid the reference, the earl of Northumberland writes to the king and council, that he dressed himself, at midnight, at Warwick, by the blaze of the neighboring villages burned by the Scottish marauders." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

341. **Too well in case.** In high condition, too corpulent.

342. **Shoreswood and Tillmouth** were villages in the neighborhood. Note the make-up of both words.

362. **Shrieve.** See shrive.



384. **Roast hissing crabs.** Compare Whittier's *Snow-Bound*.

“The apples sputtered in a row.”

389. **A holy Palmer.** The term comes from carrying a palm-branch. See 470.

“A *Palmer*, opposed to a *Pilgrim*, was one who made it his sole business to visit different holy shrines, travelling incessantly, and subsisting by charity; whereas the *Pilgrim* retired to his usual home and occupations, when he had paid his devotions at the particular spot which was the object of his pilgrimage.” — SCOTT, *Notes*.

390. **Salem, Jerusalem,** cut short for the sake of the metre.

472. **The Palmer.** The student will be assisted by reading ii. 169-222.

## INTRODUCTION TO CANTO SECOND

**Rev. John Marriot** contributed several ballads to Scott's *Border Minstrelsy*. He was the tutor of the young lord mentioned in line 84 below. As related in the introduction, he shared Walter Scott's sports and conversation.

1. **The scenes.** “*Ettricke Forest*, now a range of mountainous sheep-walks, was anciently reserved for the pleasure of the royal chase. Since it was disparked, the wood had been, by degrees, almost totally destroyed, although, wherever protected from the sheep, copses soon arise without any planting. When the king hunted there, he often summoned the array of the country to meet and assist his sport. Thus, in 1528, James V. ‘made proclamation to all lords, barons, gentlemen, landwardmen, and freeholders, that they should compear at Edinburgh, with a month's victuals, to pass with the king where he pleased, to danton the thieves of Tiviotdale, Annandale, Liddisdale, and other parts of that country; and also warned all gentlemen that had good dogs, to bring them, that he might hunt in the said country as he pleased: . . .’ The second day of June the king passed out of Edinburgh to the hunting, with many of the nobles and gentlemen of Scotland with him, to the

number of twelve thousand men ; and hounded and hawked all the country and bounds. I heard say, he slew, in these bounds, eighteen score of harts' ” (Pitcottie's *History of Scotland*). — SCOTT, *Notes*.

5. **Yon thorn.** Note that Scott has the old thorn give *its* ideas of the change brought about in three hundred years. Commenting on this passage, Ruskin says : “ Observe Scott's habit of looking at nature neither as dead, or merely material, in the way that Homer regards it, nor as altered by his own feelings, in the way that Keats and Tennyson regard it, but as having an animation and pathos of *its own*, wholly irrespective of human presence or passion, — an animation which Scott loves and sympathizes with, as he would with a fellow creature, forgetting himself altogether, and subduing his own humanity before what seems to him the power of the landscape. Scott does not dwell on the grey stubbornness of the thorn, because he himself is at that moment disposed to be dull, or stubborn ; neither on the cheerful peeping forth of the rowan, because he himself is that moment cheerful or curious ; but he perceives them both with the kind of interest that he would take in an old man or a climbing boy ; forgetting himself in sympathy with either age or youth.” — *Modern Painters*, Part iv., Chap. xvi. 36.

73. **Untenanted Bowhill.** The Buccleuch family are away from Bowhill, one of their residences. Father, mother, and son are mentioned.

84. **No youthful Baron.** Young George Henry Scott, son of the Earl of Dalkeith, afterward Duke of Buccleuch, the head of the Scott family. The youth was temporarily absent, as was supposed, but died shortly after the publication of the poem. What Scott intended to be merely a token of affection for the future head of the family formed a presage of his death, and gave Scott no little grief.

106. **Long-descended lord.** His next-door neighbor, Mr. Pringle, of Whytebank, whose “sportive boys” much delighted to hear Scott's tales of Wallace, etc.

147. **Saint Mary's silent lake.** "This beautiful sheet of water forms the reservoir from which the Yarrow takes its source. It is connected with a smaller lake, called the Loch of the Lowes, and surrounded by mountains. In the winter, it is still frequented by flights of wild swans; hence my friend Mr. Wordsworth's lines:—

'The swans on sweet Saint Mary's lake  
Float double, swan and shadow.'

\* \* \* \* \*

The Chapel of Saint Mary of the Lowes was situated on the eastern side of the lake, to which it gives name." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

Wordsworth was much annoyed because Scott did not quote him correctly. The couplet is as follows:—

"The swan on still Saint Mary's lake  
Float double, swan and shadow."

— *Yarrow Unvisited* (1803).

264. **Thy harp.** An allusion to the contributions made by Mr. Marriot to the *Border Minstrelsy*. Marriot had been a student at Oxford University on the Isis, a branch of the Thames. The Isis and the Thame, uniting near Dorchester, form the Thames proper, though the name Thames is now commonly applied to the Isis as far as, and sometimes beyond, Oxford.

## CANTO SECOND

### THE CONVENT

1. **The breeze**, subject of *curled* in line 6. While not strictly grammatical *it* is used to bring the real subject to mind; *rolled* is a participle modifying *smoke*.

11. **It bore a bark along.** This use of a breeze to carry the reader to a far distant scene is highly ingenious. Leaving Marmion to pass out of Norham Castle, the second canto is devoted partly to the journey of Clare, the Palmer's affianced bride, from Whitby to Lindisfarn, or St. Cuthbert's holy isle, and partly to the terrible punishment of Constance, whom Marmion had left at Lindisfarn to be rid of her importunity.

90. **But distressed.** It is a pity to tell a plot beforehand, but the student will see the way more clearly if he understands that lines 91 and 92 refer to the Palmer and line 94 to Marmion.

115. **Poets told.** See Spenser's *Faerie Queen*, Book I.

124. **Had practised.** To prevent her marriage to Marmion.

249. **Their stony folds.** Fossils.

281. **Relics.** "The resting-place of the remains of this saint is not now matter of uncertainty. So recently as 17th of May, 1827, 1139 years after his death, their discovery and disinterment were effected. Under a blue stone, in the middle of the shrine of St. Cuthbert, at the eastern extremity of the choir of Durham Cathedral, there was then found a walled grave, containing the coffins of the saint. The skeleton was found swathed in five silk robes of emblematical embroidery, the ornamental parts laid with gold leaf, and these again covered with a robe of linen. Beside the skeleton was also deposited several gold and silver *insignia*, and other relics of the saint. The bones of the saint were again restored to the grave in a new coffin, amid the fragments of the former ones. Those portions of the inner coffin which could be preserved, including one of its rings, with the silver altar, golden cross, stole, comb, two maniples, bracelets, girdle, gold wire of the skeleton, and fragments of the five silk robes, and some of the rings of the outer coffin, made in 1541, were deposited in the library of the Dean and Chapter, where they are now preserved." — LOCKHART, *Notes*.

289. **Galwegians** = the forayers of Galloway. "Every one has heard that when David I., with his son Henry, invaded Northumberland, in 1136, the English host marched against them under the holy banner of St. Cuthbert; to the efficacy of which was imputed the great victory which they obtained in the bloody battle of Northallerton, or Cuton-moor. The conquerors were at least as much indebted to the jealousy and intractability of the different tribes who composed David's army; among whom, as mentioned in the text, were the Galwegians, the Britons of Strath-Clyde, the men



of Teviotdale and Lothian, with many Norman and German warriors." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

304. **And hear his anvil.** Tradition has it that Cuthbert was supposed to sit at night on a rock in Holy Island, using an opposite rock as an anvil, whereon he forged the wheel-shaped fossil joints of a sea crinoid. For some account of these fossils look up *entrochite*.

357. **The heads of Convents three.** See 80–84 above.

538. **This guilty packet** reappears in v. 688.

571. **If Marmion's late remorse should wake.** See vi. 946.

574. **Your guest again.** See 258 above.

575. **A darker hour ascends.** Referring to the suppression of monasteries under Henry VIII. a quarter of a century later.

606. **The butcher work.** As the victims were walled in alive this term seems too sanguinary.

### INTRODUCTION TO CANTO THIRD

**William Erskine.** When Scott was a young advocate, far more interested in ballads, clients, and characters, than in law, William Erskine was one of a knot of young men who gathered around Scott every morning to hear his latest story. Scott was an able story-teller, with an acquired tincture of the law. Erskine was an able lawyer with literary proclivities. Erskine rose to eminence in the law and occupied a seat on the bench, retaining a warm affection for Scott and an unbounded admiration for his genius. Scott contented himself with a clerkship in the court and rose to eminence as a man of letters, but he would engage in no undertaking without a consultation with his old intimate and literary adviser.

31. **If still misspent.** Note that from the middle of line 31 to 110 Scott represents Erskine as speaking to him in favor of classic rhyme, in the manner of Pope and Dryden, for instance, and urging him to celebrate the great military events of the decade then going



oy. Scott's reply follows and gives the secret, as he himself understood it, of his literary activity.

46. **Brunswick.** Karl W. F., Duke of Brunswick-Lüneburg. He was in command of the Prussian forces at the battle of Jena, Oct. 14, 1806, but fell in a second battle on the same day at Auerstädt.

78. **Arminius**, the Latin name for Hermann, the man of the Heer, or army, who defeated the Romans in the Teutoberg forest, 19 A. D., and saved Germany, we might almost say Teutonic civilization, from subversion. A colossal bronze statue, 86 feet in height on a pedestal 100 feet high, has been erected, 1875, on the field of the *Hermann Schlacht*. The patriotic order of the Sons of Hermann in the United States have erected a second, though more modest, statue at New Ulm. Scott represents Erskine as wishing that some British Arminius might rise to stay the course of French victory under the leadership of "that dragon" (l. 59), Napoleon. There was just a chance of a French invasion of England.

81. **The Red Cross hero.** Look up an account of Sir Sidney Smith, a British admiral who, with the aid of a few Turks, held St. Jean d'Acre against the "Invincible" Napoleon in 1779. He had previously held a commission in the Swedish army, and was afterward wounded at Alexandria, where he served under "the father of the fight," Sir Ralph Abercrombie (1800-1801).

103. **When she**, Joanna Baillie. Scott had great admiration for Miss Baillie, but he certainly overdoes his praise when he represents her as awakening Shakespeare's harp after a silence of two hundred years. Compare introduction to *The Lady of the Lake*.

130. **Batavia**, on the northern coast of Java, is the principal town of the Dutch East Indies. It is situated on low coast lands, intersected by canals, Dutch fashion. Subject to fever.

211. **Mansion's gray-haired sire.** With this picture of Scott's grandfather and home circle, compare Whittier's father and household in *Snow-Bound*, Burns's family in *The Cotter's Saturday Night*, and Goldsmith's home scenes in *The Deserted Village*.

## CANTO THIRD

## THE HOSTEL OR INN

1. The poem now returns to the point where the first canto broke off. For an account of what befell the Abbess of St. Hilda and Clare on the home journey from Lindisfarn, see line 506, where the tale of the second canto is resumed.

6. **Merse forayers**, from the Merse or March — the lower part of the valley of the Tweed. The more natural route of Marmion lay nearer the sea. Scott admitted to his friends that he made Marmion choose this route in order to have opportunity to describe the scenery of the third and fourth cantos. The Merse forayers could have made no impression on Marmion's band. A poetic ruse.

31. **Bush and flagon**. The tavern sign. An old English proverb declares that "Good wine needs no bush," or sign. Referring to a tale called *The Friars of Berwick*, Scott says in his notes: "Simon Lawder, 'the gay ostlier,' seems to have lived very comfortably; and his wife decorated her person with a scarlet kirtle, and a belt of silk and silver, and rings upon her fingers; and feasted her paramour with rabbits, capons, partridges, and Bordeaux wine. At least, if the Scottish inns were not good, it was not for want of encouragement from the Legislature; who, so early as the reign of James I., not only enacted that in all boroughs and fairs there be hostellaries, having stables and chambers, and provision for man and horse, but by another statute, ordained that no man, travelling on horse or foot, should presume to lodge anywhere except in these hostellaries; and that no person, save innkeepers, should receive such travellers, under the penalty of forty shillings, for exercising such hospitality. But in spite of these provident enactments, the Scottish hostels are but indifferent, and strangers continue to find reception in the houses of individuals."

105. **That sullen scowl**. Recall Selby's fear lest the Palmer be leagued with the evil one. See i. 436-439.

117. **Constant's strains**. Constance, the nun, was known by

the masculine name of Constant, while she rode as a page or as she bitterly says, "a horse-boy in Marmion's train," ii. 505.

132. **Such have I heard.** Scott refers to the regular employment of Highland reapers in the season of the Lowland harvest. These incursions of harvest hands had taken the place of the more ancient foray. For *ear* (of oats) we are more accustomed to say *head*, reserving *corn* and *ear* for Indian corn or maize.

170. **In the lost battle.** See vi. 972.

180. **His grave.** See 1120.

211. **A death peal rung.** This is the hour of Constance's imurement at Lindisfarn.

"Among other omens to which faithful credit is given among the Scottish peasantry is what is called the 'dead-bell,' explained by my friend James Hogg to be that tinkling in the ear which the country people regard as the secret intelligence of some friend's decease."—Scott, *Notes*.

255. **To spare his age, his youth.**

298. **His sovereign's mandate.** To carry a message to the court of Scotland.

333. **The Goblin-Hall.** "A vaulted hall under the ancient castle of Gifford, the construction of which has, from a very remote period, been ascribed to magic. A stair of twenty-four steps led down to this apartment, which is a large and spacious hall, with an arched roof; and though it hath stood for so many centuries, and been exposed to the external air for a period of fifty or sixty years, it is still as firm and entire as if it had only stood a few years. From the floor of this hall another stair of thirty-six steps leads down to a pit which hath a communication with Hopes-water. A great part of the walls of this large and ancient castle are still standing. In 1737 the Goblin Hall was tenanted by the Marquis of Tweeddale's falconer. It is now rendered inaccessible by the fall of the stair."—Scott, *Notes*.

354. **There floated Haco's banner.** See 472.

"In 1263, Haco, King of Norway, came into the Firth of Clyde

with a powerful armament, and made a descent at Largs, in Ayrshire. Here he was encountered and defeated, on the 2d October, by Alexander III. Haco retreated to Orkney, where he died soon after this disgrace to his arms. There are still existing, near the place of battle, many barrows, some of which, having been opened, were found, as usual, to contain bones and urns." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

483. **Wage Northern war.** Out of intense interest in the part Great Britain was playing in European politics, Scott makes Alexander have a premonition of the bombardment of Copenhagen, not by Nelson in 1801, but, as has been pointed out, by the British fleet in 1807, while he was engaged on *Marmion*.

510. **Quaighs**, pronounced **kwāks**. Drinking cups. Related to quaff.

599. **Selle**, usually **sell**. Look up the meaning. Scott uses the same word with a wider meaning in *Lay of the Last Minstrel*, vi. 8.

“As those that sat in lordly selle.”

## INTRODUCTION TO CANTO FOURTH

**James Skene** was often Scott's companion when he rode the dales of the border country gathering warp for his romance. He visited Ashestiel and Abbotsford for weeks at a time, hunting, riding, reading, and conversing. Perhaps none of Scott's friends knew him better. During the period of threatened French invasion, the young men of quality organized the Royal Edinburgh Light Horse Volunteers. Skene was cornet and Scott was quartermaster. This is the friend who informed Mr. Lockhart that many of the finest passages in *Marmion*, and particularly the energetic descriptions of the Flodden fight, were struck out while they were in quarters with their troop of cavalry in the autumn of 1807.

“In the intervals of drilling Scott used to delight in walking his powerful black steed up and down by himself upon the Portobello sands, within the beating of the surge; and now and then you would see him plunge in his spurs and go off as if at the charge, with the spray dashing about him. As we rode back to Mussel-



burgh, he often came and placed himself beside me to repeat the verses that he had been composing during these pauses of our exercise."

30. **Graver cares.** When these lines were written Scott had already been engaged over a year on *Marmion*. The graver cares to which he alludes were his duties as a clerk of the sessions, — clerk of the court we would say, — which required his closest attention four or five hours daily from May to July, and again from November to March; this during twenty-five years of his greatest literary activity.

132. **Lamented Forbes.** Pronounce Forbes as a word of two syllables. "Sir William Forbes of Pitsligo, baronet; unequalled, perhaps, in the degree of individual affection entertained for him by his friends, as well as in the general respect and esteem of Scotland at large. His *Life of Beattie*, whom he befriended and patronized in life, as well as celebrated after his decease, was not long published before the benevolent and affectionate biographer was called to follow the subject of his narrative. This melancholy event very shortly succeeded the marriage of the friend to whom this introduction is addressed with one of Sir William's daughters." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

191. **Whose absence.** "Colin Mackenzie of Portmore, the same who beat him in a competition of rhymes at the high school, and whose ballad of *Ellandonnan Castle* had been included in the third volume of the *Minstrelsy*." — LOCKHART, *Life*.

## CANTO FOURTH

### THE CAMP

13. **By Becket's bones.** Thomas à Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury, to whose shrine the pilgrims of Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* were going. See i. 409.

31. **By Friar Rush.** Will-o'-the-Wisp or Jack-o'-Lantern. A



dancing light that was wont to lead benighted travellers into bogs, etc.

32. **The cause.** The Palmer relates the cause to Clare. See vi. 238.

39. **As if he knew of nought.** See iii. 258.

73. **A vaulted screen.** For the same thought see ii. 174. Some have thought that the pointed arch and aisle of Gothic architecture were suggested by forest aisles. The resemblance is certainly striking.

91. **Caxton or de Worde.** Famous English printers of Columbus's day. Their books are rare and valuable.

120. **A king-at-arms.** The general charge of the heralds was committed to this officer. Great respect is shown Marmion by sending not only a herald, but four heralds and the king-at-arms to meet him.

130. **Satiric rage.** "Sir David Lindesay was well known for his early efforts in favor of the reformed doctrines; and, indeed, his play, coarse as it now seems, must have had a powerful effect upon the people of his age." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

135. **His cap of maintenance.** An official cap of velvet trimmed with fur.

159. **Whom royal James, etc.** "The office of heralds, in feudal times, being held of the utmost importance, the inauguration of the Kings-at-arms, who presided over their colleges, was proportionally solemn. In fact, it was the mimicry of a royal coronation, except that the unction was made with wine instead of oil. In Scotland, a namesake and kinsman of Sir David Lindesay, inaugurated in 1592, 'was crowned by King James with the ancient crown of Scotland,' and, on occasion of the same solemnity, dined at the king's table, wearing the crown. It is probable that the coronation of his predecessor was not less solemn. So sacred was the herald's office, that, in 1515, Lord Drummond was by Parliament declared guilty of treason, and his lands forfeited, because he had struck

with his fist the Lion King-at-arms when he reproved him for his follies. Nor was he restored, but at the Lion's earnest solicitation."

191. **Path they now decline**, *i.e.* forsake for a path to the left, leading up the Tyne to Crichtoun Castle. Dr. Rolfe, whose critical work is so valuable, and so generally accepted on both sides of the Atlantic, is surely at fault in thinking of the *descent*.

194. **Crichtoun Castle**. "A large ruinous castle on the banks of the Tyne, about seven miles from Edinburgh. As indicated in the text, it was built at different times and with a very differing regard to splendor and accommodation. The oldest part of the building is a narrow keep, or tower, such as formed the mansion of a lesser Scottish baron; but so many additions have been made to it that there is now a large courtyard, surrounded by buildings of different ages. The eastern front of the court is raised above a portico, and decorated with entablatures bearing anchors. All the stones of this front are cut into diamond facets, the angular projections of which have an uncommonly rich appearance. The inside of this part of the building appears to have contained a gallery of great length and uncommon elegance. Access was given to it by a magnificent staircase, now quite destroyed. The soffits are ornamented with twining cordage and rosettes; and the whole seems to have been far more splendid than was usual in Scottish castles. It were to be wished the proprietor would take a little pains to preserve these splendid remains of antiquity, which are at present used as a fold for sheep, and wintering cattle; although, perhaps, there are very few ruins in Scotland which display so well the style and beauty of ancient castle-architecture. The castle of Crichton has a dungeon vault, called the *Massy More*. The epithet is of Saracenic origin."

254. **Bothwell**, a grandson of Adam Hepburn, was the dastardly Bothwell of history, who procured the murder of Darnley and married Mary Queen of Scots.

287. **Linlithgow**. "The convenience afforded for the sport of falconry, which was so great a favorite during the feudal ages, was

probably one cause of the attachment of the ancient Scottish monarchs to Linlithgow and its fine lake. . . . The situation of Linlithgow Palace is eminently beautiful. It stands on a promontory of some elevation, which advances almost into the midst of the lake. The form is that of a square court composed of buildings of four stories high, with towers at the angles. The fronts within the square, and the windows, are highly ornamented, and the size of the rooms, as well as the width and character of the staircases, are upon a magnificent scale. One banquet-room is ninety-four feet long, thirty feet wide, and thirty-three feet high, with a gallery for music. The king's wardrobe, or dressing-room, looking to the west, projects over the walls, so as to have a delicious prospect on three sides, and is one of the most enviable boudoirs we have ever seen." — SCOTT, *Provincial Antiquities*.

291. **The wild buck bells.** Bells is a verb. "This sylvan sound conveyed great delight to our ancestors, chiefly, I suppose, from association. A gentle knight in the reign of Henry VIII., Sir Thomas Wortley, built Wantley Lodge, in Wancliffe Forest, for the pleasure (as an ancient inscription testifies) of 'listening to the hart's bell.'" — SCOTT, *Notes*.

298. **June saw his father's overthrow.** "The rebellion against James III. was signalized by the cruel circumstance of his son's presence in the hostile army. When the king saw his own banner displayed against him, and his son in the faction of his enemies, he lost the little courage he ever possessed, fled out of the field, fell from his horse, as it started at a woman and water-pitcher, and was slain, it is not well understood by whom. James IV., after the battle, passed to Stirling, and hearing the monks of the chapel royal deploring the death of his father, their founder, he was seized with deep remorse, which manifested itself in severe penances. The battle of Sauchie-burn, in which James III. fell, was fought 18th June, 1488." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

312. **In Catherine's aisle.** "The king's throne, in St. Catherine's aisle, which he had constructed for himself, with twelve stalls for the Knights Companions of the Order of the Thistle, is

still shown as the place where the apparition was seen. The expression, 'My mother has sent me,' could only be used by St. John, the adopted son of the Virgin Mary. The whole story is so well attested, that we have only the choice between a miracle or an imposture. Mr. Pinkerton plausibly argues, from the caution against incontinence, that the queen was privy to the scheme of those who had recourse to this expedient, to deter King James from his impolitic war." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

490. **Dun-Edin.** Edinburgh. The term is Celtic.

521. **The Borough-moor.** "The Borough, or common Moor of Edinburgh, was of very great extent, reaching from the southern walls of the city to the bottom of Braid Hills. It was anciently a forest; and, in that state, was so great a nuisance, that the inhabitants of Edinburgh had permission granted to them of building wooden galleries, projecting over the street, in order to encourage them to consume the timber; which they seem to have done very effectually. When James IV. mustered the array of the kingdom there, in 1513, the Borough-moor was, according to Hawthornden, 'a field spacious, and delightful by the shade of many stately and aged oaks.'" — SCOTT, *Notes*.

535. **Hebudes** = Hebrides; **Lodon** = Lothian; **Redswire**, one of the Cheviot Hills; **Rosse** = Ross-shire.

557. **Sisters Seven.** Seven culverins or cannon cast by Borthwick.

571. **In a massive stone.** "Upon that, and similar occasions, the royal standard is traditionally said to have been displayed from the Hare Stane, a high stone, now built into the wall, on the left hand of the highway leading towards Braid, not far from the head of Bruntsfield-links. The Hare Stone probably derives its name from the British word *Har*, signifying an army." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

623. **Berwick-Law.** A high hill near Berwick, on the coast of Berwickshire. *w* is silent in all such words (ber'-ik). See vi. 836.

646. **The hour of prime.** Six o'clock in the morning.



650. **St. Catherine.** See note on 316, above. The chapel of St. Rocque was at Stirling. Linlithgow and Stirling were favorite residences in the hunting season. A hunt was always preceded by an early, but short, hunting mass. A royal hunt from Stirling, it will be remembered, occupies the first Canto of *The Lady of the Lake*.

### INTRODUCTION TO CANTO FIFTH

**George Ellis** was engaged in collecting *Specimens of Ancient English Poetry* at the same time that Scott was working on his *Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border*. Richard Heber brought them together; kindred tastes and pursuits led to an extensive correspondence. Frequent allusions to Ellis's work occur in this introduction, as in 147 and 154.

28. **Our city home.** Note that this introduction was written at Edinburgh, where Scott's clerkship duties called him during a part of each year.

34. **Lament the ravages of time,** *i.e.* as in the introduction to Canto Second.

37. **Caledonia's Queen.** Edinburgh, frequently called the *Queen of the North*.

41. **Laky flood.** Referring to an ancient lake long since drained.

118. **To Henry, etc.** "Henry VI., with his Queen, his heir, and the chiefs of his family, fled to Scotland after the fatal battle of Towton." — Scorr, *Notes*.

120. **Bourbon's relics.** "In January, 1796, the exiled Count d'Artois, afterwards Charles X. of France, took up his residence in Holyrood, where he remained until August, 1799. When again driven from his country by the Revolution of July, 1830, the same unfortunate Prince, with all the immediate members of his family, sought refuge once more in the ancient palace of the Stuarts, and remained there until 18th September, 1832." — Scorr, *Notes*.



139. **Anglo-Norman tones.** “Mr. Ellis, in his valuable Introduction to the *Specimens of Romance*, has proved . . . that the courts of our Anglo-Norman kings, rather than those of the French monarchs, produced the birth of romance literature. The story of Blondel, the famous and faithful minstrel of Richard I., needs no commentary.” — SCOTT, *Notes*.

180. **Windsor's oaks.** Scott visited Ellis near Windsor. He composed part of *Marmion* at Ellis's home, but the allusion here is probably to his having read aloud two or three cantos of *The Lay of the Last Minstrel* to Mr. Ellis's family under one of the royal oaks in Windsor forest.

## CANTO FIFTH

### THE COURT

51. **Forty days' provision.** Each yeoman, or private, carried his own provisions. Each man of title provisioned his own immediate retinue. The king provided only for his own official family and guard. The modern commissary department had not been devised. When provisions gave out and could no longer be eked out by foraging, the army simply melted away. Each company or clan made its way home, living on the country it passed through. A long campaign with a considerable army was a military impossibility. See v. 1008.

84. **Scarce caring.** The element here described was at times another source of weakness. Many a half-won Border battle was lost again by eagerness to secure a bit of plunder to carry home as a trophy. See vi. 1006.

147. **To wheel the bar.** To curve the bar, to fashion it into a horseshoe.

172. **That night with wassail.** Compare Byron's subsequent account of the feast preceding the battle of Waterloo: —

“There was a sound of revelry by night,  
And Belgium's capital had gathered then

Her beauty and her chivalry; and bright  
The lamps shone o'er fair women and brave men."

— *Childe Harold*, iii. 21.

*Wassail* — Anglo-Saxon *waeshāl*, be whole — health be to you, the ancient salutation, or toast, at a feast. Later, the feast itself.

262. **To Scotland's court.** See i. 264 and following. "King James's acquaintance with Lady Heron of Ford did not commence until he marched into England. Our historians impute to the king's infatuated passion the delays which led to the fatal defeat of Flodden. . . . That she came and went, however, between the armies of James and Surrey, is certain. . . . Heron of Ford had been, in 1511, in some sort accessory to the slaughter of Sir William Ker of Cessford, Warden of the Middle Marches. . . . Part of the pretence of Lady Ford's negotiations with James was the liberty of her husband." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

270. **Sent him a turquoise ring.** "A turquoise ring — probably this fatal gift — is, with James's sword and dagger, preserved in the College of Heralds, London." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

287. **Lithgow, Linlithgow.**

398. **Archibald Bell-the-Cat.** "Archibald Douglas, Earl of Angus, a man remarkable for strength of body and mind, acquired the popular name of *Bell-the-Cat* upon the following remarkable occasion: James the Third, of whom Pitscottie complains that he delighted more in music and 'policies of building,' than in hunting, hawking, and other noble exercises, was so ill advised as to make favorites of his architects and musicians, whom the same historian irreverently terms masons and fiddlers. His nobility, who did not sympathize in the king's respect for the fine arts, were extremely incensed at the honors conferred on those persons, particularly on Cochran, a mason, who had been created Earl of Mar; and seizing the opportunity, when, in 1482, the king had convoked the whole array of the country to march against the English, they held a midnight council in the church of Lauder for the purpose of forcibly removing these minions from the king's person. When all had

agreed on the propriety of this measure, Lord Gray told the assembly the Apologue of the Mice, who had formed a resolution that it would be highly advantageous to their community to tie a bell round the cat's neck, that they might hear her approach at a distance; but which public measure unfortunately miscarried, from no mouse being willing to undertake the task of fastening the bell. 'I understand the moral,' said Angus, 'and, that what we propose may not lack execution, I will *bell the cat*.' "

Scott supplements the foregoing by a considerable extract from Pitscottie, from which we understand that under the leadership of Angus, "the lords held them quiet till they caused certain armed men to enter the king's pallion, and two or three wise men to pass with them, and give the king fair pleasant words, till they laid hands on all the king's servants, and took them and hanged them before his eyes over the bridge of Lawder. Incontinent they brought forth Cochran, and his hands bound with a tow, who desired them to take one of his own pallion-tows and bind his hands. for he thought shame to have his hands bound with such tow of hemp, like a thief. The lords answered, he was a traitor, he deserved no better; and, for despight, they took a hair-tether, and hanged him over the bridge of Lauder, above the rest of his complices."

399. **Left the dusky vale.** Angus was compelled to exchange the Hermitage for the less desirable but still magnificent castle of Bothwell.

413. **Against the war.** "Angus was an old man when the war against England was resolved upon. He earnestly spoke against that measure from its commencement, and on the eve of the battle of Flodden, remonstrated so freely upon the impolicy of fighting, that the king said to him, with scorn and indignation, 'if he was afraid, he might go home.' The Earl burst into tears at this insupportable insult, and retired accordingly, leaving his sons, George, Master of Angus, and Sir William of Glenbervie, to command his followers. They were both slain in the battle, with two hundred gentlemen of the name of Douglas. The aged Earl, broken-hearted at the calamities of his house and his country, retired into a religious

house, where he died about a year after the field of Flodden." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

429. **Tantallon hold.** "The ruins of Tantallon Castle occupy a high rock projecting into the German Ocean, about two miles east of North Berwick. The building is not seen till a close approach, as there is rising ground betwixt it and the land. The circuit is of large extent, fenced upon three sides by the precipice which overhangs the sea, and on the fourth by a double ditch and very strong outworks. Tantallon was a principal castle of the Douglas family." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

440. **A bevy.** The party of the abbess and Clare were captured on their way from Lindisfarn to Whitby and were brought perhaps by sea to Leith, the port of Edinburgh.

615. **A stranger maiden.** Constance de Beverly.

678. **These papers fell.** See ii. 562.

735. **This awful summons came.** "This supernatural citation is mentioned by all our Scottish historians. It was, probably, like the apparition at Linlithgow, an attempt, by those averse to the war, to impose upon the superstitious temper of James IV." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

766. **Another spoke.** The Palmer spoke when his name. De Wilton, was called. Note that the incantation of an evil spirit is broken by an appeal to the Saviour in this case but usually by an appeal to some saint. See iv. 442.

828-832. **Jealousy.** When Marmion and Wilton were rivals, Marmion felt no jealousy for he did not love, but his pride was hurt because Clara preferred De Wilton. His victory over Wilton was secured by such loathsome meanness that it almost led him to hate Clara, the innocent cause. **Conquest** is the subject of led.

## INTRODUCTION TO CANTO SIXTH

**Richard Heber**, a wealthy member of Parliament for Oxford University, was a confirmed antiquarian and bibliomaniac. His



collection of books was valued at \$900,000. During a winter spent at Edinburgh he became acquainted with Scott and, finding him engaged in bringing out the *Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border*, Heber not only sent home for everything in his library of possible service, but plunged with ardor into the bookstalls of Edinburgh in search of trophies for Scott's use. Under these circumstances a warm friendship very naturally sprang up. Richard Heber is not to be mistaken for his half-brother, Bishop Heber, author of the well-known missionary hymn,

“ From Greenland's icy mountains,” etc.

7. **At Iol** (Jol, Yule). “The Iol of the heathen Danes (a word still applied to Christmas in Scotland) was solemnized with great festivity. The humor of the Danes at table displayed itself in pelting each other with bones: and Torfæus tells a long and curious story, in the history of Hrolfe Kraka, of one Hottus, an inmate of the court of Denmark, who was so generally assailed with these missiles, that he constructed, out of the bones with which he was overwhelmed, a very respectable entrenchment against those who continued the raillery. The dances of the Northern warriors round the great fires of pine-trees are commemorated by Olaus Magnus, who says, they danced with such fury, holding each other by the hands, that if the grasp of any failed, he was pitched into the fire with the velocity of a sling. The sufferer, on such occasions, was instantly plucked out, and obliged to quaff off a certain measure of ale as a penalty for ‘spoiling the king's fire.’” — SCOTT, *Notes*.

45. **Post and pair.** A popular game of cards. **Vulgar** does not mean coarse. See dictionary.

55. **To part the squire and lord.** In such a feast as is described in Canto First the salt was customarily placed on the table at a point between the guests of high and the guests of low degree. Hence the expressions *above the salt* and *below the salt*.

95. **My great-grandsire.** “Mr. Scott of Harden, my kind and affectionate friend, and distant relation, has the original of a poetical invitation, addressed from his grandfather to my relative, from which a few lines in the text are imitated. They are dated, as the



epistle in the text, from Mertoun-house, the seat of the Harden family.

With amber beard, and flaxen hair,  
 And reverend apostolic air,  
 Free of anxiety and care,  
 Come hither, Christmas-day, and dine;  
 We'll mix sobriety with wine,  
 And easy mirth with thoughts divine.  
 We Christians think it holiday,  
 On it no sin to feast or play;  
 Others, in spite, may fast and pray.  
 No superstition in the use  
 Our ancestors made of a goose;  
 Why may not we, as well as they,  
 Be innocently blithe that day,  
 On goose or pie, on wine or ale,  
 And scorn enthusiastic zeal? —  
 Pray come, and welcome, or plague rott  
 Your friend and landlord, Walter Scott.

*'Mr. Walter Scott, Lessuden.'*

“The venerable old gentleman, to whom the lines are addressed, was the younger brother of William Scott of Raeburn. Being the cadet of a cadet of the Harden family, he had very little to lose; yet he contrived to lose the small property he had, by engaging in the civil wars and intrigues of the house of Stuart. His veneration for the exiled family was so great, that he swore he would not shave his beard till they were restored: a mark of attachment, which, I suppose, had been common during Cromwell's usurpation; for, in Cowley's ‘Cutter of Coleman Street,’ one drunken cavalier upbraids another, that, when he was not able to afford to pay a barber, he affected to ‘wear a beard for the king.’ I sincerely hope this was not absolutely the original reason of my ancestor's beard; which, as appears from a portrait in the possession of Sir Henry Hay Macdougall, Bart., and another painted for the famous Dr. Pitcairn, was a beard of a most dignified and venerable appearance.” — SCOTT.

150. **Locutus Bos**, a speaking ox. Scott alludes to Livy's belief in the prodigy.

## CANTO SIXTH

## THE BATTLE

8. **Terouenne**. A French town not far distant from Calais. Marmion might not join the English army under Surrey, at least not actively, while under commission from Henry as an ambassador to the Scottish court.

34. **The Bloody Heart**. Robert Bruce ordered that his heart be intrusted to the Douglas to be carried to the Holy Land. Although the wish was not fully accomplished, the Bloody Heart became the cognizance of the Douglas family. The *field* is the whole surface of the shield; the *chief* is the upper part. *Mullets* were star-shaped wheels, significant of the spur.

228. **A Scottish hostel**. See iii. 30 and following.

233. **Vulgar augury**. See iii. 217.

327. **A bishop by the altar**. "The well-known Gawain Douglas, Bishop Dunkeld, son of Archibald Bell-the-Cat, Earl of Angus. He was author of a Scottish metrical version of the *Æneid*, and of many other poetical pieces of great merit. He had not at this period attained the mitre." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

456. **A letter forged**. The letter was really forged by Constance, but under Marmion's directions. See 7. 600 and 656.

"Lest the reader should partake of the earl's astonishment, and consider the crime as inconsistent with the manners of the period, I have to remind him of the numerous forgeries (partly executed by a female assistant) devised by Robert of Artois, to forward his suit against the Countess Matilda; which, being detected, occasioned his flight into England, and proved the remote cause of Edward the Third's memorable wars in France. John Harding, also, was expressly hired by Edward IV. to forge such documents as might appear to establish the claim of fealty asserted over Scotland by the English monarchs." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

“The poem was finished in too much haste to allow me an opportunity of softening down, if not removing, some of its most prominent defects. The nature of Marmion’s guilt, although similar instances were found, and might be quoted, as existing in feudal times, was nevertheless not sufficiently peculiar to be indicative of the character of the period, forgery being the crime of a commercial rather than a proud and warlike age. This gross defect ought to have been remedied or palliated. Yet I suffered the tree to lie as it had fallen.” — SCOTT, *Introduction to Marmion* (1830).

483. **Did hammers clang.** The armorer was repairing the old armor of Hotspur for Wilton’s use.

500. **The Master.** Angus’s oldest son, now gone with his brother to Flodden Field.

545. **Reverend Pilgrim.** A friend of Walter Scott, Patrick Brydone, Esq., of some literary taste. Scott delights in these allusions, now lost upon the general reader.

582. **Rocky den.** Den signifies valley. Dean has the same meaning. See *Crichtoun Dean*, iv. 252.

583. **The sullen Till.**

“Tweed said to Till,  
 ‘What gars ye rin sae still?’  
 Till said to Tweed,  
 ‘Though ye rin wi’ speed,  
 Yet where ye drown ae man  
 I drown twa.’”

*Old ballad.*

951. **Dark presage.** See iii. 211.

971. **She ever sung.** See iii. 170.

1066. **Broken was his shield.** “The powerful poetry of these passages can receive no illustration from any praises or observations of ours. It is superior, in our apprehension, to all that this author has hitherto produced; and, with a few faults of diction, equal to anything that has ever been written upon similar subjects. From the moment the author gets in sight of Flodden field, indeed, to the

end of the poem, there is no tame writing, and no intervention of ordinary passages. He does not once flag or grow tedious; and neither stops to describe dresses and ceremonies, nor to commemorate the harsh names of feudal barons from the Border. There is a flight of five or six hundred lines, in short, in which he never stoops his wing, nor wavers in his course; but carries the reader forward with a more rapid, sustained, and lofty movement, than any epic bard that we can at present remember." — JEFFREY, *Edinburgh Review* (April 1808).

1095. **When fanatic Brook**, etc. "This storm of Lichfield cathedral, which has been garrisoned on the part of the king, took place in the great civil war. Lord Brook, who, with Sir John Gill, commanded the assailants, was shot with a musket-ball through the visor of his helmet. The royalists remarked that he was killed by a shot fired from St. Chad's cathedral, and upon St. Chad's day, and received his death-wound in the very eye with which he had said he hoped to see the ruin of all the cathedrals in England. The magnificent church in question suffered cruelly upon this and other occasions; the principal spire being ruined by the fire of the besiegers." — SCOTT, *Notes*.

1110. **One of those flowers**. The lord mentioned in the preceding line is one of the many flowers of Scotland lost on Flodden Field. Speaking of the Scottish Army Scott says: "They lost, perhaps, from eight to ten thousand men, but that included the very prime of their nobility, gentry, and even clergy. Scarce a family of eminence but had an ancestor killed at Flodden; and there is no province in Scotland, even at this day, where the battle is mentioned without a sensation of terror and sorrow."

1120. **His grave**. See iii. 119.





## INDEX TO NOTES

Amadis, 218.  
anvil, 228.  
Arminius, 229.  
Ascapart, 218.  
  
Baillie, 229.  
Batavia, 229.  
Becket, 233.  
bells, the buck, 236.  
Bell-the-Cat, 240.  
Berwick-Law, 237.  
Bevis, 218.  
blast, the gathering, 217.  
Bloody Heart, 245.  
Border, the, 219.  
Borough-moor, 237.  
Bosworth, 219.  
Bourbon, 238.  
Bowhill, 225.  
Brook, 247.  
brook, 221.  
Brunswick, 229.  
bush and flagon, 230.  
  
case, well in, 223.  
Catherine's aisle, 236.  
Caxton, 234.  
cloth yard, 220.  
Constant, 230.  
crabs, roast, 224  
Crichtoun, 235.

den, 246.  
Dun-Edin, 237.  
  
Ellis, 238.  
Erskine, 228.  
Ettrick Forest, 224.  
  
feud, 222.  
Fontenaye, 221.  
Forbes, 233.  
forged letters, 245.  
Friar Rush, 233.  
  
Gadite, 217.  
Galwegian, 227.  
Gawain, 245.  
Goblin-Hall, 231.  
great-grandsire, 243  
  
Haco, 231.  
Hafnia, 217.  
Heber, 242.  
Hebrides, 237.  
heralds, 221.  
Heron, Lady, 240.  
hoods, light to set, 223  
Horncliff-hill, 219.  
hostel, 245.  
Hugh the Heron, 222.  
  
James III., 236.  
jealousy, 242.

king-at-arms, 234.

Lindisfarn, 223.

Linlithgow, 235.

listed ease, 220.

locutus bos, 245.

lordlings, 221.

Lothian, 237.

Loves, 226.

Mackenzie, 233.

maintenance, cap of, 234.

Malvoisie, 219.

Marriot, 224.

Master, the, 246.

Merse, 230.

Milan, 220.

Minstrel, the Border, 217.

Morgana, 218.

Morrice-pikes, 220.

Norham, 218.

Oriana, 218.

Palinurus, 217.

palmer, 224.

peal, death, 231.

post and pair, 243.

prime, hour of, 237.

quaighs, 232.

rage, 234.

Red Cross, 229.

Red King, 218.

Redswire, 237.

ring, to bear away the, 220.

rose, 217.

Rosse, 237.

Salem, 224.

selle, 232.

Shoresword, 223.

shrieve, 223.

sire, gray-haired, 229.

sisters seven, 237.

Skene, 232.

St. Cuthbert, 227.

St. Mary's, 226.

summons, 242.

Tantallon, 242.

Terouenne, 245.

thorn, 225.

Till, 246.

Tillmouth, 223.

turquoise ring, 240.

Tyne, 235.

wassail, 240.

Wilton, 222.

Windsor, 239.

Wordsworth, 226.

Ytene's oaks, 218.

Yule, 243.

Macmillan's

# Pocket Series of English Classics

Cloth *Uniform in Size and Binding* 25 cents each

---

- Addison's Sir Roger de Coverley.** Edited by ZELMA GRAY, East Side High School, Saginaw, Mich.
- Andersen's Fairy Tales.** Translated from the Danish by CAROLINE PEACHEY and H. W. DULCKEN. With biographical notes and introduction by SARAH C. BROOKS, Training School, Baltimore, Md.
- Arabian Nights.** Edited by CLIFTON JOHNSON.
- Arnold's Sohrab and Rostum and other Poems.** Edited by JUSTUS COLLINS CASTLEMAN, Bloomington High School, Bloomington, Ind.
- Austen's Pride and Prejudice.** Edited by J. W. HEERMANS.
- Austen's Sense and Sensibility.** Edited by EDWIN L. MILLER.
- Bacon's Essays.** Edited by Professor GEORGE HERBERT CLARKE, Mercer University, Macon, Ga.
- Baker's Out of the Northland.**
- Blackmore's Lorna Doone.** Edited by ALBERT L. BARBOUR, Superintendent of Schools, Natick, Mass.
- Boswell's Life of Johnson. Abridged.** Edited by MARY H. WATSON.
- Browning's Shorter Poems.** Edited by FRANKLIN T. BAKER, Teachers College, New York City.
- Mrs. Browning's Poems. Selections.** Edited by HELOISE E. HERSEY.
- Bryant's Thanatopsis, Sella, and other Poems.** Edited by J. H. CASTLEMAN, Michigan Military Academy, Orchard Lake, Mich.
- Bulwer-Lytton's Last Days of Pompeii.** Edited by J. H. CASTLEMAN.
- Bunyan's The Pilgrim's Progress.** Edited by Professor HUGH MOFFATT, Central High School, Philadelphia, Pa.
- Burke's Speech on Conciliation.** Edited by S. C. NEWSOM, Manual Training High School, Indianapolis, Ind.
- Burns' Poems and Songs.** Selected by P. M. BUCK, JR.
- Byron's Shorter Poems.** Edited by RALPH HARTT BOWLES, Instructor in English in The Phillips Exeter Academy, Exeter, N. H.
- Byron's Childe Harold's Pilgrimage.** Edited by A. J. GEORGE.
- Carlyle's Essay on Burns, with Selections.** Edited by WILLARD C. GORE, Armour Institute, Chicago, Ill.
- Carlyle's Heroes and Hero Worship.** Edited by Mrs. ANNIE RUSSELL MARBLE.
- Carroll's Alice in Wonderland.** Edited by CHARLES A. MCMURRY,

## Pocket Series of English Classics—CONTINUED

- Chaucer's Prologue to the Book of the Tales of Canterbury, the Knight's Tale, and the Nun's Priest's Tale.**  
Edited by ANDREW INGRAHAM.
- Church's The Story of the Iliad.**
- Church's The Story of the Odyssey.**
- Coleridge's The Ancient Mariner.** Edited by T. F. HUNTINGTON, Leland Stanford Junior University.
- Cooper's Last of the Mohicans.** Edited by W. K. WICKES, Principal of the High School, Syracuse, N. Y.
- Cooper's The Deerslayer.**
- Cooper's The Spy.** Edited by SAMUEL THURBER, JR.
- Dana's Two Years before the Mast.** Edited by HOMER E. KEYES, Dartmouth College.
- Defoe's Robinson Crusoe. Abridged.** Edited by CLIFTON JOHNSON.
- Defoe's Robinson Crusoe. Part I.** Edited by CHARLES R. GASTON.
- DeQuincey's Confessions of an English Opium-Eater.**  
Edited by ARTHUR BEATTY, University of Wisconsin.
- DeQuincey's Joan of Arc and The English Mail-Coach.**  
Edited by CAROL M. NEWMAN, Virginia Polytechnic Institute.
- Dickens's A Christmas Carol and The Cricket on the Hearth.** Edited by JAMES M. SAWIN and IDA M. THOMAS.
- Dickens's David Copperfield.** Edited by Edwin Fairley. 2 vols.
- Dickens's A Tale of Two Cities.** Edited by H. G. BUEHLER, Hotchkiss School, Lakeville, Conn., and L. MASON.
- Dryden's Palamon and Arcite.** Edited by PERCIVAL CHUBB.
- Early American Orations, 1760-1824.** Edited by LOUIE R. HELLER. Instructor in English in the De Witt Clinton High School, New York City.
- Edward's Sermons. Selections.** Edited by H. N. GARDINER, Professor of Philosophy, Smith College.
- Emerson's Earlier Poems.** Edited by O. C. GALLAGHER.
- Emerson's Essays. Selected.** Edited by EUGENE D. HOLMES.
- Emerson's Representative Men.** Edited by PHILO MELVYN BUCK, JR., William McKinley High School, St. Louis, Mo.
- English Narrative Poems.** Edited by CLAUDE N. FUESS and HENRY W. SANBORN.
- Epoch-making Papers in United States History.** Edited by M. S. BROWN, New York University.
- Franklin's Autobiography.**
- Mrs. Gaskell's Cranford.** Edited by Professor MARTIN W. SAMPSON, Indiana University.
- George Eliot's Silas Marner.** Edited by E. L. GULICK, Lawrenceville School, Lawrenceville, N. J.
- George Eliot's Mill on the Floss.** Edited by IDA AUSHERMANN.
- Goldsmith's The Deserted Village and The Traveller**  
Edited by ROBERT N. WHITEFORD, High School, Peoria, Ill.



## Pocket Series of English Classics—CONTINUED

- Goldsmith's Vicar of Wakefield.** Edited by H. V. BOYNTON, Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.
- Gray's Elegy and Cowper's John Gilpin.** Edited by J. H. CASTLEMAN.
- Grimm's Fairy Tales.** Edited by JAMES H. FASSETT, Superintendent of Schools, Nashua, N. H.
- Hale's The Man Without a Country.** Edited by S. M. TUCKER.
- Hawthorne's Grandfather's Chair.** Edited by H. H. KINGSLEY, Superintendent of Schools, Evanston, Ill.
- Hawthorne's The House of the Seven Gables.** Edited by CLYDE FURST.
- Hawthorne's Mosses from an Old Manse.** Edited by C. E. BURBANK.
- Hawthorne's Tanglewood Tales.** Edited by R. H. BEGGS.
- Hawthorne's Twice-Told Tales.** Edited by C. R. GASTON.
- Hawthorne's The Wonder-Book.** Edited by L. E. WOLFE, Superintendent of Schools, San Antonio, Texas.
- Holmes' Autocrat of the Breakfast Table.** *Preparing.*
- Holmes' Poems (Selections).** Edited by J. H. CASTLEMAN.
- Homer's Iliad.** Translated by LANG, LEAF and MYERS.
- Homer's Odyssey.** Translated by BUTCHER and LANG.
- Hughes' Tom Brown's School Days.** Edited by CHARLES S. THOMAS.
- Huxley's Essays and Addresses. Selections.** Edited by P. M. BUCK.
- Irving's Alhambra.** Edited by ALFRED M. HITCHCOCK, Public High School, Hartford, Conn.
- Irving's Knickerbocker's History of New York.** Edited by Prof. E. A. GREENLAW, Adelphi College, New York City.
- Irving's Life of Goldsmith.** Edited by GILBERT SYKES BLAKELY, Teacher of English in the Morris High School, New York City.
- Irving's Sketch Book.**
- Irving's Tales of a Traveler.** Edited by JENNIE CHASE.
- Keary's Heroes of Asgard.** Edited by CHARLES H. MORSS.
- Keats' Imitation of Christ.** Edited by BROTHER LEO.
- Kingsley's The Heroes: Greek Fairy Tales.** Edited by CHARLES A. MCMURRY, Ph.D.
- Lamb's Essays of Elia.** Edited by HELEN J. ROBINS.
- Lamb's Tales from Shakespeare.** Edited by A. AINGER.
- Lincoln's Addresses.** Edited by PERCIVAL CHUBB.
- Lockhart's Life of Scott. Selections.** *Preparing.*
- Longfellow's Courtship of Miles Standard.** Edited by HOMER P. LEWIS.
- Longfellow's Courtship of Miles Standish, and Minor Poems.** Edited by W. D. HOWE, Butler College, Indianapolis, Ind.
- Longfellow's Evangeline.** Edited by LEWIS B. SEMPLE, Commercial High School, Brooklyn, N. Y.
- Longfellow's The Song of Hiawatha.** Edited by ELIZABETH J. FLEMING, Teachers' Training School, Baltimore, Md.



## Pocket Series of English Classics—CONTINUED

- Longfellow's Tales of a Wayside Inn.** Edited by J. H. CASTLEMAN.
- Lowell's Vision of Sir Launfal.** Edited by HERBERT E. BATES, Manual Training High School, Brooklyn, N. Y.
- Macaulay's Essay on Addison.** Edited by C. W. FRENCH, Principal of Hyde Park High School, Chicago, Ill.
- Macaulay's Essay on Clive.** Edited by J. W. PEARCE, Assistant Professor of English in Tulane University.
- Macaulay's Essay on Johnson.** Edited by WILLIAM SCHUYLER, Assistant Principal of the St. Louis High School.
- Macaulay's Essay on Milton.** Edited by C. W. FRENCH.
- Macaulay's Essay on Warren Hastings.** Edited by Mrs. M. J. FRICK, Los Angeles, Cal.
- Macaulay's Lays of Ancient Rome, and other Poems.** Edited by FRANKLIN T. BAKER, Teachers College, Columbia University.
- Malory's Morte d'Arthur (Selections).** Edited by D. W. SWIGGETT.
- Memorable Passages from the Bible (Authorized Version).** Selected and edited by FRED NEWTON SCOTT, Professor of Rhetoric in the University of Michigan.
- Milton's Comus, Lycidas, and other Poems.** Edited by SAMUEL E. ALLEN.
- Milton's Paradise Lost, Books I and II.** Edited by W. I. CRANE.
- Old English Ballads.** Edited by WILLIAM D. ARMES, of the University of California.
- Old Testament Selections.** Edited by F. N. SCOTT.
- Oral English. Selections.** *Preparing.*
- Out of the Northland.** Edited by EMILIE KIP BAKER.
- Palgrave's Golden Treasury of Songs and Lyrics.**
- Parkman's Oregon Trail.** Edited by C. H. J. DOUGLAS.
- Plutarch's Lives of Caesar, Brutus, and Antony.** Edited by MARTHA BRIER, Polytechnic High School, Oakland, Cal.
- Poems, Narrative and Lyrical.** Edited by ROBERT P. ST. JOHN.
- Poe's Poems.** Edited by CHARLES W. KENT, University of Virginia.
- Poe's Prose Tales. Selections.**
- Pope's Homer's Iliad. Books I, VI, XXII, XXIV.** Edited by ALBERT SMYTH, Head Professor of English Language and Literature, Central High School, Philadelphia, Pa.
- Pope's Homer's Iliad. Complete.** Edited by C. E. RHODES.
- Pope's Homer's Odyssey.** Edited by E. S. and WALDO SHUMWAY.
- Pope's The Rape of the Lock.** Edited by ELIZABETH M. KING.
- Christina Rossetti's Poems. Selections.** Edited by CHARLES PELL BURKE.
- Buskin's Crown of Wild Olive and the Queen of the Air.** Edited by W. F. MELTON.

## Pocket Series of English Classics—CONTINUED

- Ruskin's Sesame and Lilies and The King of the Golden River.** Edited by HERBERT E. BATES.
- Scott's Ivanhoe.** Edited by ALFRED M. HITCHCOCK.
- Scott's Kenilworth.** Edited by J. H. CASTLEMAN.
- Scott's Lady of the Lake.** Edited by ELIZABETH A. PACKARD.
- Scott's Lay of the Last Minstrel.** Edited by RALPH H. BOWLES.
- Scott's Marmion.** Edited by GEORGE B. AITON, State Inspector of High Schools for Minnesota.
- Scott's Quentin Durward.** Edited by ARTHUR LLEWELLYN ENO, Instructor in the University of Illinois.
- Scott's The Talisman.** Edited by FREDERICK TREUDLEY, State Normal College, Ohio University.
- Select Orations.** Edited by A. M. HALL.
- Selected Poems for Required Reading in Secondary Schools.** Edited by H. N. BOYNTON.
- Shakespeare's As You Like It.** Edited by CHARLES ROBERT GASTON.
- Shakespeare's Hamlet.** Edited by L. A. SHERMAN, Professor of English Literature in the University of Nebraska.
- Shakespeare's Henry V.** Edited by RALPH HARTT BOWLES, Phillips Exeter Academy, Exeter, N. H.
- Shakespeare's Julius Caesar.** Edited by GEORGE W. HUFFORD and LOIS G. HUFFORD, High School, Indianapolis, Ind.
- Shakespeare's King Lear.** Edited by PHILO M. BUCK.
- Shakespeare's Macbeth.** Edited by C. W. FRENCH.
- Shakespeare's Merchant of Venice.** Edited by CHARLOTTE W. UNDERWOOD, Lewis Institute, Chicago, Ill.
- Shakespeare's Midsummer Night's Dream.** Edited by E. C. NOYES.
- Shakespeare's Richard II.** Edited by JAMES HUGH MOFFATT.
- Shakespeare's The Tempest.** Edited by S. C. NEWSON.
- Shakespeare's Twelfth Night.** Edited by EDWARD P. MORTON.
- Shelley and Keats Poems. Selections.** Edited by S. C. NEWSON.
- Sheridan's The Rivals, and The School for Scandal.** Edited by W. D. HOWE.
- Short Stories. A Collection.** Edited by L. A. PITTINGER.
- Southern Orators.** Edited by J. H. McCONNELL.
- Southern Poets. Selections.** Edited by W. L. WEBER.
- Spenser's Faerie Queene, Book I.** Edited by GEORGE ARMSTRONG WAUCHOPE, Professor of English in the South Carolina College.
- Stevenson's Kidnapped.** Edited by JOHN THOMPSON BROWN.
- Stevenson's Master of Ballantrae.** Edited by H. A. WHITE.
- Stevenson's Travels with a Donkey and an Inland Voyage.** Edited by W. L. CROSS.
- Stevenson's Treasure Island.** Edited by H. A. VANCE, Professor of English in the University of Nashville.

## Pocket Series of English Classics—CONTINUED

---

- Swift's *Gulliver's Travels*. Edited by CLIFTON JOHNSON.  
Tennyson's *Idylls of the King*. Edited by CHARLES W. FRENCH.  
Tennyson's *In Memoriam*. Edited by J. W. PEARCE.  
Tennyson's *Shorter Poems*. Edited by CHARLES READ NUTTER.  
Tennyson's *The Princess*. Edited by WILSON FABRAND.  
Thackeray's *Henry Esmond*. Edited by JOHN BELL HENNE-  
MAN, University of the South, Sewanee, Tenn.  
Thackeray's *English Humorists*. Edited by J. C. CASTLE-  
MAN.  
Thoreau's *Walden*. Edited by BYRON RIES.  
Trevelyan's *Life of Macaulay*. *Selections.* *Preparing.*  
Virgil's *Aeneid*. Translated by CONINGTON. Edited by  
EDGAR S. SHUMWAY.  
Washington's *Farewell Address, and Webster's First Bun-  
ker Hill Oration*. Edited by WILLIAM T. PECK.  
Whittier's *Snowbound and other Early Poems*. Edited by  
A. L. BOUTON.  
John Woolman's *Journal*.  
Wordsworth's *Shorter Poems*. Edited by EDWARD FULTON











002304119069

PR  
5311  
A1  
1915

Scott, (Sir) Walter  
Marmion

Wallace

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE

CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

**WALLACE ROOM**

UTL AT DOWNSVIEW



D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM C  
39 09 14 04 07 003 3